As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols \hat{n} \hat{n} on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 \triangle is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

Safety Labels P. 99

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety Labels on the vehicle.
- Safety Messages preceded by a safety alert symbol and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION.
 These signal words mean:

ADANGER

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

AWARNING

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

ACAUTION

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- Safety Headings such as Important Safety Precautions.
- Safety Section such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models

≥ Safe Driving P. 39

For Safe Driving P. 40 Seat Belts P. 46 Airbags P. 59

Instrument Panel P. 101

Indicators P. 102 Gauges and Displays P. 145

Controls P. 165

Clock* P. 166 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 168

Panoramic Roof* P. 201

Adjusting the Seats P. 232 Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 252

Features P. 291

Audio System* P. 292 Audio System Basic Operation P. 298, 316 Customized Features P. 373, 380

Driving P. 447

Before Driving P. 448 Towing a Trailer P. 452 Off-road Guidelines P. 453 Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 545 Refueling P. 547

→ Maintenance P. 553

Before Performing Maintenance P. 554 Oil Monitor System* P. 557

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 584

Battery P. 599 Remote Transmitter Care P. 602

Accessories and Modifications P. 610

→ Handling the Unexpected P. 613

Tools* P. 614 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 616

Overheating P. 642 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 645

▶ Information P. 659

Specifications P. 660 Identification Numbers P. 663

			h.	
Child Safety P. 70	Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 98	Safety Labels P. 99		
			11. 14	
			1	
			, "Y	
Tailgate P. 185 Operating the Switches Around the Steerin Heating* and Cooling System* P. 272	Security System P. 195 ng Wheel P. 205	Opening and Closing the Windows P. 197 Adjusting the Mirrors P. 229 Climate Control System* P. 278		
			h. Y	-
Audio Error Messages P. 365 Hands-Free Telephone System P. 406, 427	General Information on the Audio System	P. 367		
			llh.	
When Driving P. 455 Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions P. 550	Braking P. 517 Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 551	Parking Your Vehicle P. 536		
			Illian.	
Maintenance Schedule P. 563 Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P Heating* and Cooling System*/Climate Co	3	Tyres P. 594 Cleaning P. 605		
				H
Engine Does Not Start P. 635	If the Battery Is Dead P. 638	Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 641	,	
Fuses P. 651	Emergency Towing P. 656	If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 657		
			ייון"	
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 665	Utility Compliance* P. 666			

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 39

Instrument Panel P. 101

Controls P. 165

Features P. 291

Driving P. 447

Maintenance P. 553

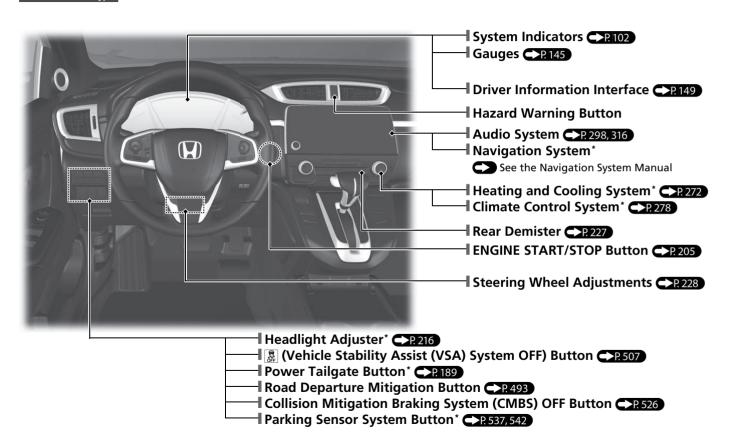
Handling the Unexpected P. 613

Information P. 659

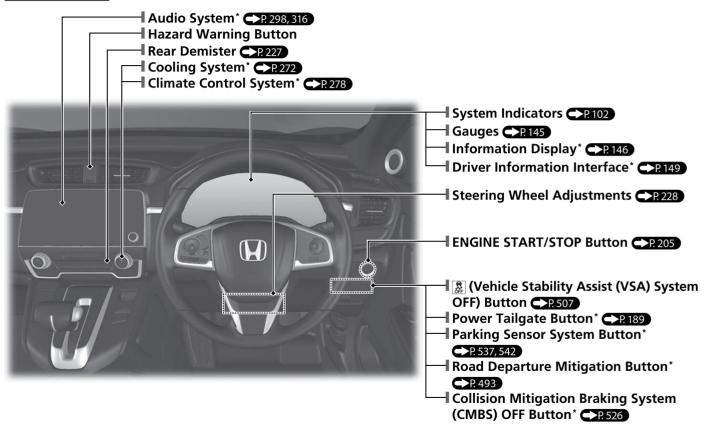
Index P. 667

Visual Index

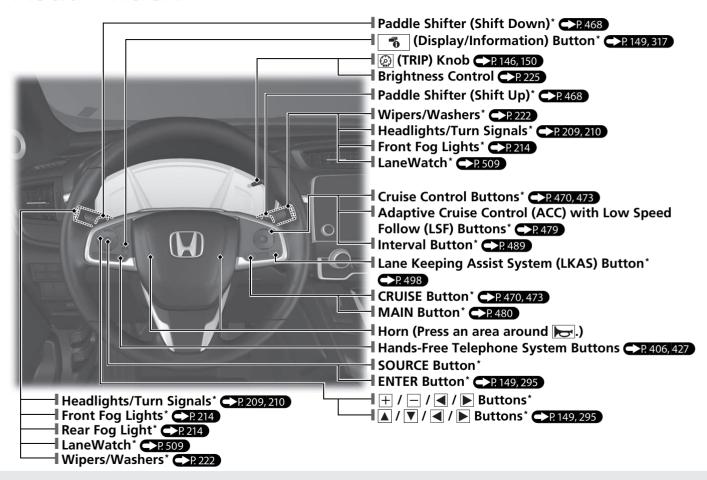
Left-hand Drive Type



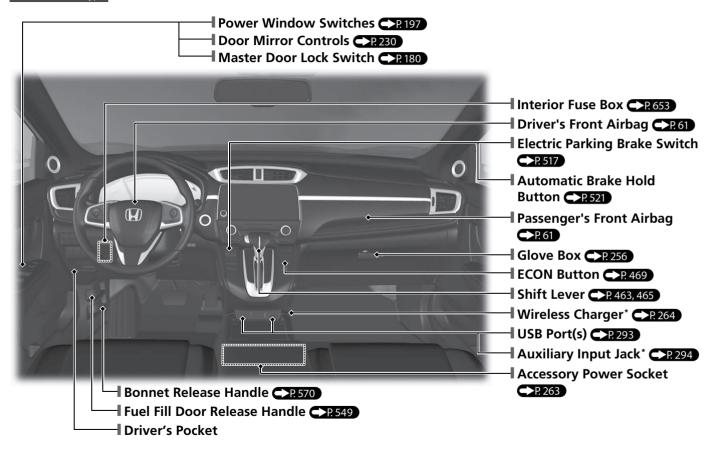
Right-hand Drive Type



Visual Index



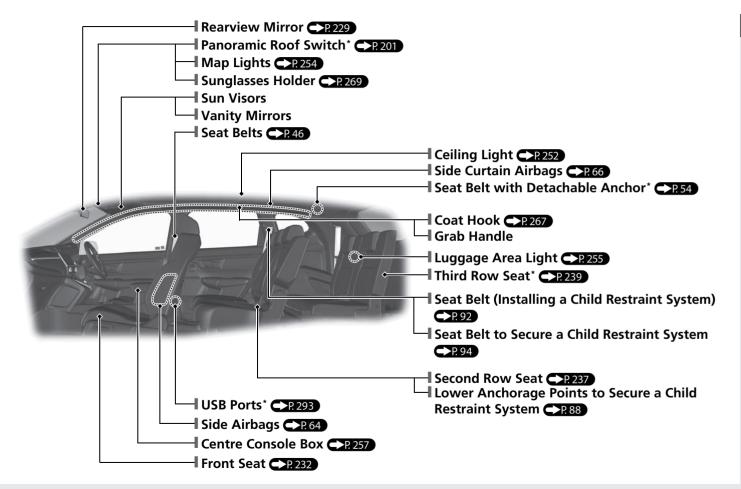
Left-hand Drive Type



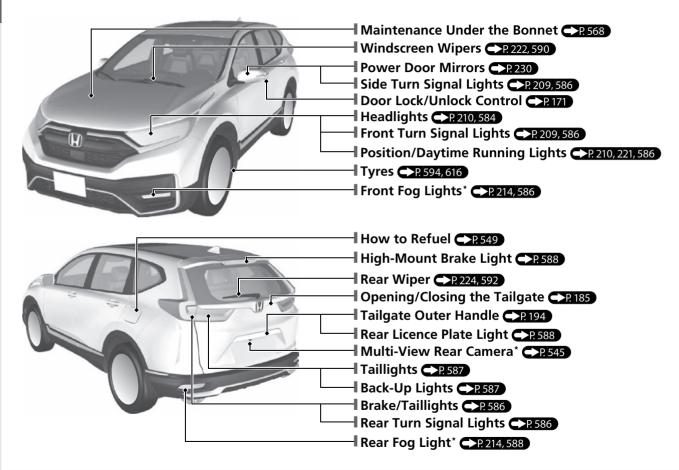
Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type ■ ECON Button ► P. 469 - Shift Lever ← P. 463, 465 - Electric Parking Brake Switch C>P.517 Automatic Brake Hold Button P.521 Driver's Front Airbag **○**P.61 Interior Fuse Box P.653 Power Window Switches **○**P.197 Door Mirror Controls **→**P. 230 Master Door Lock Switch **○**P. 180 Driver's Pocket **-** Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P.549 Bonnet Release Handle →P. 570 USB Ports* P.293 Accessory Power Socket **→** P. 263 - Passenger's Front Airbag ← R61

- Glove Box ←>P. 256



Visual Index

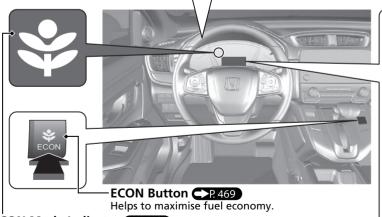


Eco Assist System

Ambient Meter -

 The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.









Models with driver information interface
The message is displayed for a few seconds
when the ECON button is pressed.

ECON Mode Indicator →P.117

Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.

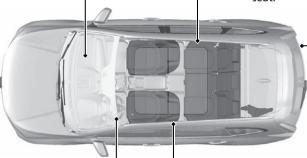
Safe Driving

Airbags CP.59

• Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P70

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



-Exhaust Gas Hazard P.98

 Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts CR46

- Fasten your seat belt and sit with a correct posture.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist P.448

 Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel

Gauges (Note: Information Display* (Note: Information Interface) | Capacity (N

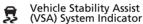
Models with information display System Indicators

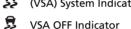


















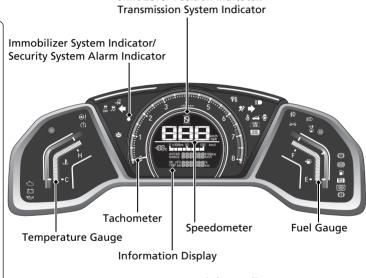
Parking Brake and
Brake System Indicator
(Red)

Parking Brake and
Brake System Indicator
(Amber)

Keyless Access System Indicator

Tailgate Open Indicator

Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator



Shift Lever Position Indicator/

Lights Indicators

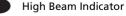
⇒00 Lights On Indicator

System Indicators



Light Control Indicator

Eights on malcutor



Front Fog Light
Indicator

System Indicators



Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators



Low Fuel Indicator



Seat Belt Reminder Indicator



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator



CRUISE MAIN Indicator



CRUISE CONTROL



Starter System Indicator



Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator



Automatic Brake Hold Indicator



Shift to Park Indicator



Brake Depressing Indicator



Rotate Wheel Indicator

System Indicators



Malfunction Indicator Lamp



Low Oil Pressure Indicator



Charging System Indicator



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator



VSA **OFF** Indicator



Automatic Brake Hold **System Indicator**



Automatic Brake Hold Indicator

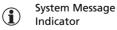


ECON Mode Indicator



Parking Brake and **Brake System** Indicator (Red)

Parking Brake and ((1))**Brake System** Indicator (Amber)



(!)

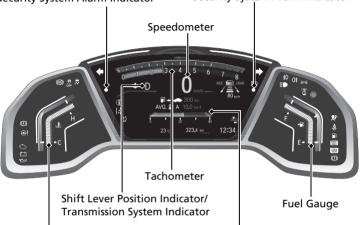
Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS Indicator*

Right-hand Drive Type

Immobilizer System Indicator/ Security System Alarm Indicator



Immobilizer System Indicator/ Security System Alarm Indicator



Temperature Gauge

Driver Information Interface

System Indicators



Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators



Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator



Low Fuel Indicator

Lights Indicators

≥00 Lights On Indicator



High Beam Indicator



Front Fog Light Indicator*



Rear Fog Light Indicator*

System Indicators



Seat Belt Reminder Indicator



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator



CRUISE MAIN Indicator*



CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*



Auto High-Beam Indicator*

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with

ACC

Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber/Green)*

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

LKAS

Indicator (Amber/ Green)*



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*



Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*

Controls CRIGGO

Clock * ← P. 166

Models with colour audio system



- Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2** Rotate ♂ to change hour, then press ⊗.
- **3** Rotate [♠] to change minute, then press [♠].
- 4 Select SET, then press ♂.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate 🗇 to select.
- Press ♂ to enter.

Models with Display Audio



- Select the (HOME) icon, then select Settings.
- 2 Select Clock, then Clock Adjustment.
- 3 Touch the respective ▲ / ▼ icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
- 4 Select OK.

Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

ENGINE START/STOP Button (\$\infty\)

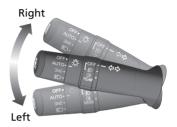
Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



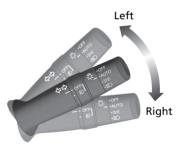
Turn Signals (TR209

Left-hand Drive Type

Turn Signal Control Lever



Right-hand Drive Type



Lights CR210

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

→P. 222

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST OFF

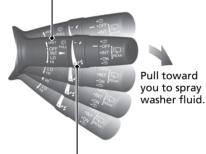
AUTO*1: Wiper speed varies automatically

INT*2: Low speed with

intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe



Adjustment Ring

: Low Sensitivity*1

- : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2

+: High Sensitivity*1

+ 4: Higher speed, more sweeps*2

- *1:Models with automatic intermittent wipers
- *2 Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel R228

 To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

○P. 179

 Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Tailgate CP. 185

 Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the keyless remote on you.

Models with power tailgate

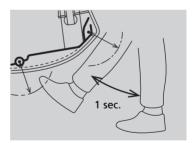
- Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.



Models with Hands Free Access

Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.



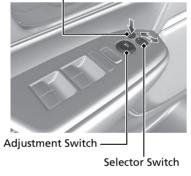


Power Door Mirrors

→P. 230

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

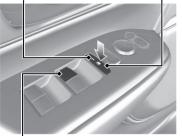
Folding Button



Power Windows CAR 197

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Indicator Power Window Lock Button

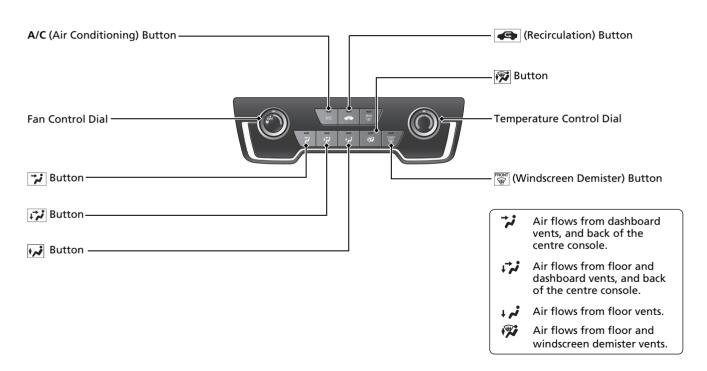


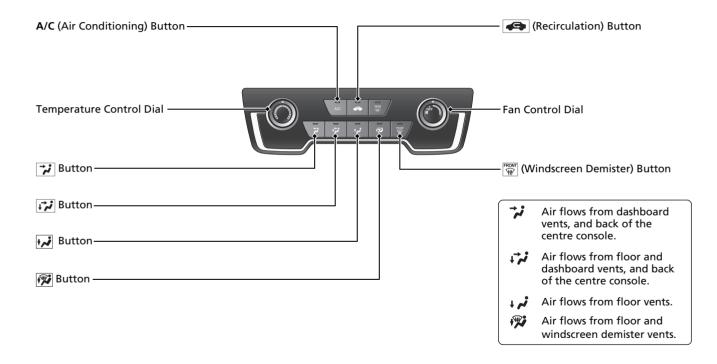
Window Switch

Heating* and Cooling System*

- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Press the Mode buttons () / () / () / () / () to select the vents air flows from.
 Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Rotate the fan control dial to **OFF** to turn the system off.
- Press the button to defrost the windscreen.

Left-hand Drive Type

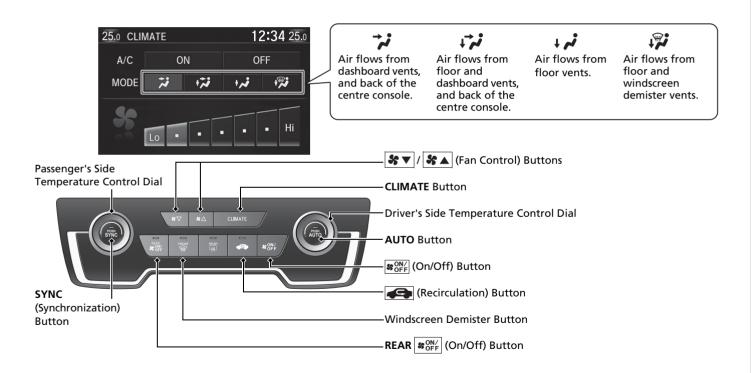


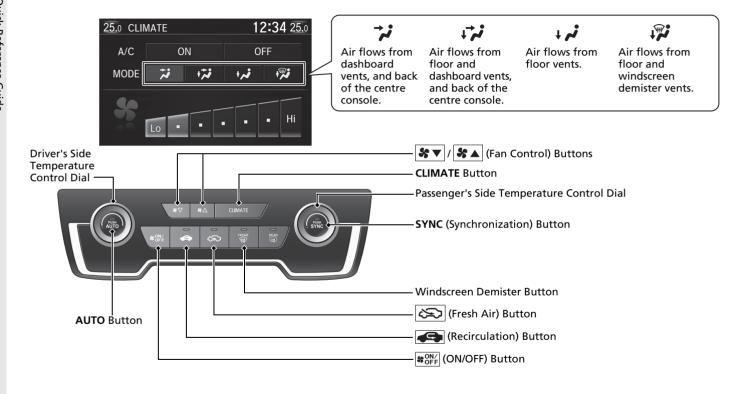


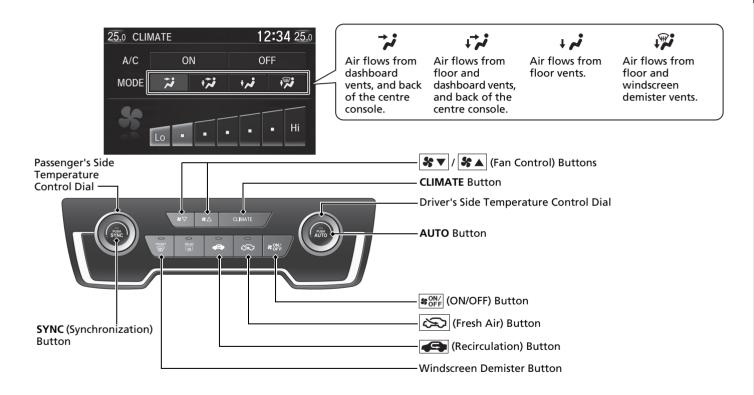
Climate Control System* **►**P.278

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the soft button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the button to defrost the windscreen.

Indonesian models



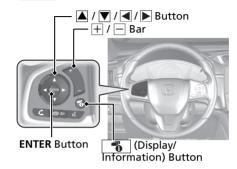




Features CREED

Audio Remote Controls

→P. 295



- - Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- ▲ / ▼ Button
 Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio
 mode as follows:

Models with colour audio system

FM1/FM2/AM/USB or iPod/*Bluetooth*® Audio/ AUX

Models with Display Audio

FM/AM/USB/iPod/Bluetooth® Audio/Apps/ Audio Apps*

- ENTER Button
- When listening to the radio
- Press ENTER to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press ENTER.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
- 1 Press ENTER to display the folder list.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
- Press ENTER to display a list of tracks in that folder.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press ENTER.

- When listening to an iPod
- Press ENTER to display the iPod music list.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
- Press ENTER to display a list of items in the category.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press ENTER.
- ▶ Press ENTER and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.
- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio
- 1 Press ENTER to display the track list.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press ENTER.

● **I** / **B** Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.

Press and hold to select the next or
previous strong station.

USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song. Press and hold to change a folder.

• (Display/Information) Button
Press to change contents.

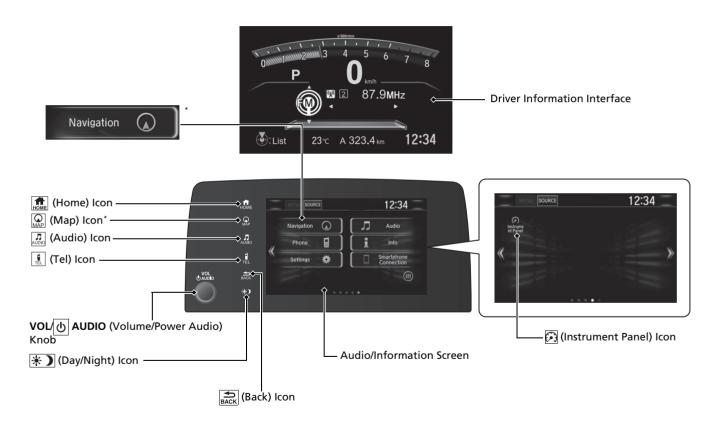
Driver Information
Interface* P. 149

Audio system* →P.292

Models with colour audio system → P. 298



For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



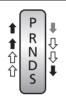
Driving CR447

Continuously Variable Transmission >P. 463, 465

• Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

Models with paddle shifters



Models without paddle shifters





Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of \boxed{P} .



Press the release button to move the shift lever.



Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.





Park

Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.



Reverse

Used when reversing.



Neutral

Transmission is not locked.



Drive

- Normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used temporarily.



Drive (S)

- Better acceleration
- Used to increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used.



Low*

- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 467

Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the shift lever is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The M indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in D

 Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



M Indicator
Shift Indicator

Shift Lever Position Indicator











VSA On and Off →P.507

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* >P.470,473

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the CRUISE button, then press -/SET once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

CMBS* On and Off →R530

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Refueling P.547

Fuel recommendation: Except Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 57 L

Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



- Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Maintenance Cass

Under the Bonnet (>P.568)

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.
- Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.



Handling the Unexpected CZEGIB

Flat Tyre P.616

 Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre* in the luggage area or using the tyre repair kit*.



Engine Won't Start →P.635

• If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating R642

 Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

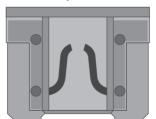
→P. 645

• Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse (\$2,651)

 Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.

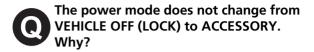


Emergency Towing →**P.656**

 Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If





- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.



The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?



The shift lever should be moved to P.

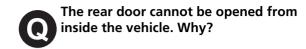


Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?



This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 523





Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle

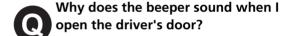
To cancel this function. slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?



If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.





The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.



Models with walk away auto lock

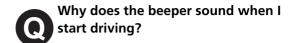
Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?



The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto door lock operating range before the door completely closes.

≥ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock*) **►>**P. 172







The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger* are not wearing their seat belts.

- Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Whv?

Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Models with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* P. 512





Indonesian 1.5 L engine models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher is recommended.

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 88 or lower on this vehicle?



Unleaded petrol with a research octane number of 91 or higher is recommended.

Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.



Indonesian 2.0 L engine models

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 90 or higher on this vehicle?



Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 90 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving	
Important Safety Precautions	40
Important Handling Information	42
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	43
Safety Checklist	44
Seat Belts	
About Your Seat Belts	4
Fastening a Seat Belt	52
Seat Belt Inspection	56
Anchorage Points	57
Airbags	
Airbag System Components	59

Types of Airbags	61
Front Airbags (SRS)	61
Side Airbags	64
Side Curtain Airbags	66
Airbag System Indicators	68
Airbag Care	69
hild Safety	
Protecting Child Passengers	70
Safety of Infants and Small Children	74
Safety of Larger Children	95
xhaust Gas Hazard	
Carbon Monovide Gas	as

afety Labo		 99

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

■ For Safe Driving

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

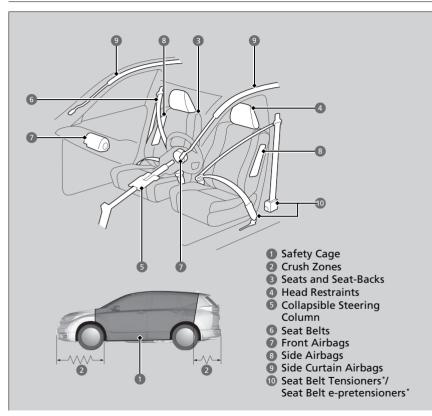
These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

- **▶ Precautions While Driving** P. 460
- Off-road Guidelines P. 453

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

∑Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

* Not available on all models

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are
adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the
vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a
crash.

Adjusting the Seats P. 232

• Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

▶ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints P. 240

Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any
passengers are properly belted as well.

Fastening a Seat Belt P. 52

• Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

Child Safety P. 70

Safety Checklist

Models with information display

If the door and the tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

- **Door Open Indicator*** P. 112
- **▶ Tailgate Open Indicator*** P. 112



45

Safety Checklist

Models with driver information interface

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* P. 128



* Not available on all models

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ About Your Seat Belts

AWARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five or seven seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The rear seat or second row seat belts must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 92

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

■ About Your Seat Belts

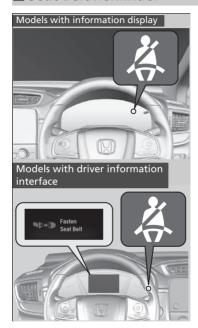
Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Continued 47

Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger* or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper* will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

Models with front passenger seat belt reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

Models with front passenger seat belt reminder

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

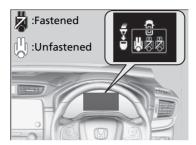
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ Rear seats*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastened or unfastened their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-tosevere frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

Seat Belt e-pretensioners*



Are the motor-powered pretensioners that start to retract the front seat belts when the CMBS, brake assist system, or VSA system is in operation. They may also activate when you steer the vehicle hard, or the vehicle is impacted. After retracted, the seat belts are slackened to their original positions. As convenient features, the e-pretensioners slightly retract the seat belts when you latch the seat belt buckle, depress the brake pedal more aggressively than you normally do, or make a sharp turn, and fully retract when you release the seat belt buckle.

Seat Belt e-pretensioners[∗]

If only the e-pretensioners were activated, no components need to be replaced.

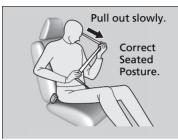
The e-pretensioners may not work if:

- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator is on.
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator is on.
- A warning message for e-pretensioners appears on driver information interface.

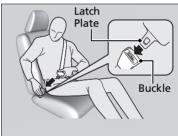
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seats P. 232



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



- Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
 - ► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

■ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

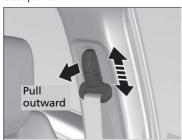
- **About Your Seat Belts** P. 46
- **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 56



- 3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces. the chance of internal injuries.
- 4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



- 1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
- 2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

>> Fastening a Seat Belt

AWARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

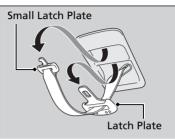
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

| Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*

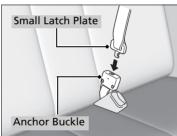


1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small

to the anchor buckle

latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

ble Anchor

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

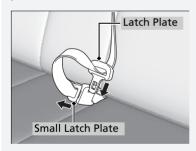
*

AWARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



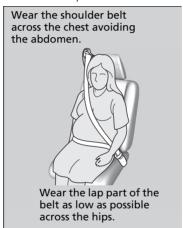


Latch

Plate

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.



Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

AWARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

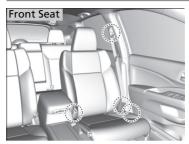
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

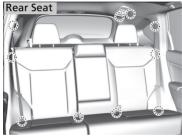
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

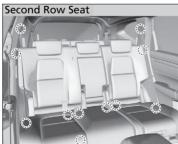
Anchorage Points



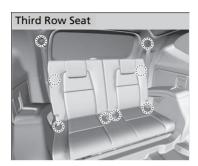
When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat or second row seat has three lap/ shoulder belts.



Continued 57



The third row seat* has two lap/shoulder belts.

59

Airbags

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked SRS AIRBAG
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked
 SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.

Models with e-pretensioners

- The front seat belt tensioners also include the e-pretensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing sensor*

* Not available on all models Continued

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

∑Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Continued 61

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs

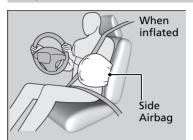
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-tosevere side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Airbags

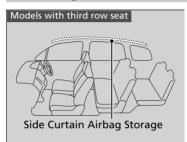
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

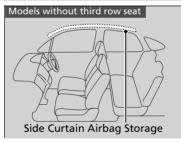
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.



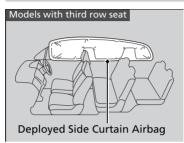
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

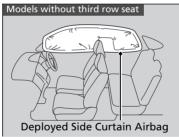
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.



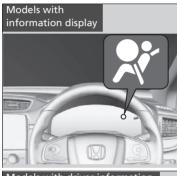
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface*.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

Models with driver information interface

Airbag System (SRS) Problem

Check System

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

AWARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

AWARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirements.

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 77

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor Except Taiwanese models

AWARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Continued 71

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Taiwanese models



Front Passenger's Doorjamb

For some types

AWARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

Dening/Closing the Power Windows P. 197

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 99

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ➤ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

► Make sure that there is no contact

▶ Protecting Infants

AWARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

AWARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

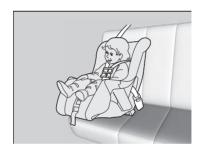
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Continued 75

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a frontfacing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

▶ Protecting Smaller Children

AWARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when not using the lower anchorage system. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

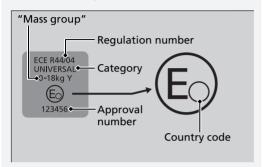
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

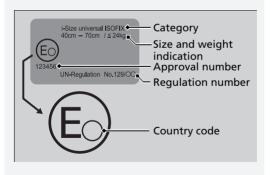
■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size*/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN/ECE Regulation.

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label*



Malaysian models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
L	Suitable for particular child restraint systems given on attached list. These restraints may be of the "specific", "restricted" or "semi-universal" category.
E	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
Ť Ľ	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

- *1: When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back to the most upright position.
- *2: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.
- *4: Suitable for particular child restraint systems given on attached list. These restraints may be of the "specific", "restricted" or "semi-universal" category.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position num				number	
			1	2	3	4
	Size g	roups	Front		2nd row	
	Weight Stature		passenger*1*2 Front facing only	Left	Centre	Right
	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	NO	res	INO	Tes
universal belted (yes/no)	Group I	9-18kg			No	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg	Yes	Yes		
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤15	0cm	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*3	Refer to ge		Yes	Yes	Yes*4	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)		-	No	No	No	No
	Group 0	Up to 10kg				
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤15	0cm	В3	В3	No	В3

≥ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

	·
Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

- *1:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back to the most upright position.
- *2:If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.
- *3:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs.

 Other CRS may also be suitable please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
- *4:Suitable for particular child restraint systems given on attached list. These restraints may be of the "specific", "restricted" or "semi-universal" category.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Malaysian models ■ Malaysian Genuine CRS List R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Croup 0	Honda baby safe	Universal
Group 0 up to 10kg	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX
up to rokg	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Croup O.	Honda baby safe	Universal
Group 0+	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX
up to 13kg	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Group I	Honda ISOFIX (Belted)	Universal ISOFIX Universal
9 to 18kg	Honda ISOFIX Neo	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Front facing)
Group II, III 15 to 36kg	-	-

Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages. However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (i-Size*/ISOFIX) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

≥ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Taiwanese models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS	Size		Vehicl	e ISOFIX po	Recommended Child	
Group	class	Fixture	Rear seat			Restraint Systems*1
Group	Class		L-Side	R-Side	Centre	Restraint Systems
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	Χ	Χ	Х	
Carrycot	G	ISO/L2	Χ	Χ	Х	
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IL	IL	X	
Croup O.	Е	ISO/R1	IL	IL	Χ	
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	Χ	
Op to 13 kg	\cup	ISO/R3	IL	IL	Χ	
	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	Х	
C 1	C	ISO/R3	IL	IL	Х	
Group I 9 to 18 kg	В	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF	Х	
9 to 18 kg	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF	Х	
	Α	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF	Х	
Group II 15 to 25 kg			Х	Х	Х	
Group III 22 to 36 kg			Х	Х	Х	

≥ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
Е	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
С	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
В	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
А	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

- *1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.
- IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
- IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semiuniversal" categories.
- X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

Continued 85

■ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat

Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Taiwanese models

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

MASS Group		Seat position Rear seat	Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1	
MA33 Group	L-Side	R-Side	Centre	Recommended Crind Restraint Systems
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	U	U	X	
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg	U	U	Х	
Group I 9 to 18 kg	U	U	X	
Group II 15 to 25 kg	U	U	Х	
Group III 22 to 36 kg	U	U	Х	

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems given in this list. These restraints may be of the "specific vehicle", "restricted", or "semi-universal" category.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

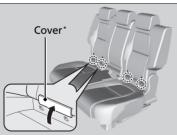
*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.



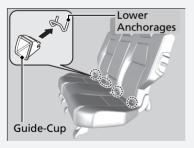
2. Pull out the anchor cover* under the marks to expose the lower anchors.

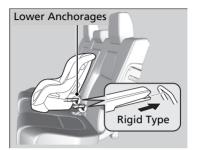
≥ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

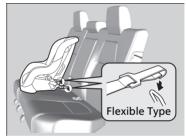
AWARNING

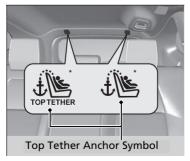
Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.









- **3.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
 - ➤ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

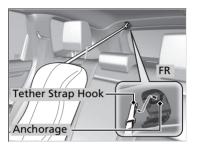
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

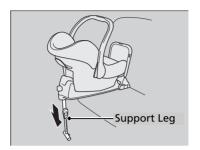
The flexible type may not be available in your country.

If adults are to use the third row seats, the child restraint anchor fittings on the ceiling should not be installed.



Child restraint system with tether strap

- **4.** Pull up the head restraint, and push it behind until it latches, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **5.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- **6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.



Child restraint system with support leg

- **4.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - ➤ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support. If this is the case, move the seat forward or back so that the support leg is resting on a level section.
 - ► Make sure that the support leg is not resting on the slide rail or cover.
 - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Continued 91

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





- **1.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- 2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
- **3.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint
- **4.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - When doing this, place your weight on child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- **5.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - ➤ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

≥ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

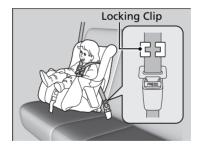


- 6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

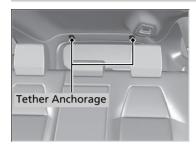
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- **3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- **4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- **5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.



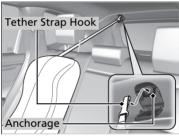
Continued 93

Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided in the ceiling for the rear seats.

If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.



- **1.** Pull up the head restraint, and push it behind until it latches, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- **2.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **3.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

If adults are to use the third row seats, the child restraint anchor fittings on the ceiling should not be installed.

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

AWARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

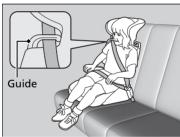
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed

Continued 95

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

≫ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the heating* and cooling system*/climate control system* as shown below.

- 1. Select the fresh air mode.
- 2. Select the mode.
- **3.** Set the fan speed to high.
- **4.** Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating* and cooling system*/climate control system* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

○ Carbon Monoxide Gas

AWARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

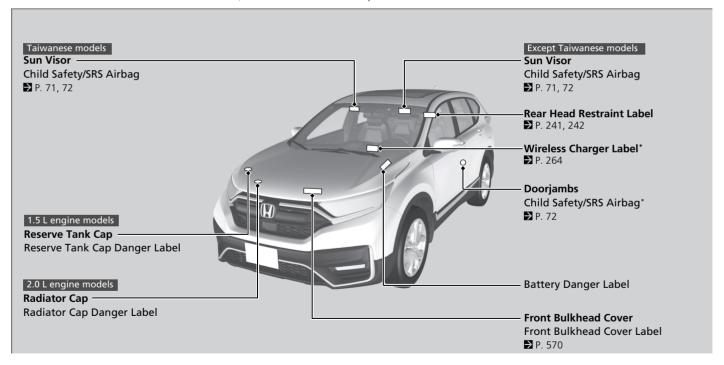
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



* Not available on all models 99



This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators

Information Display Warning and	
Information Messages*	127
Driver Information Interface Warning	an
Information Messages*	128
Gauges and Displays	
Gauges	145
Information Display*	146
Driver Information Interface *	149

101

* Not available on all models

Indicator Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Comes on for about 15 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. Stays on for about 15 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off. 	 Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. What to do when the indicator comes on P. 645 Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 647 Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on P. 648 	*1 Release Parking Brake Brake Fluid Low Check System Check System Check System *2 Release Parking Brake WARNING: Brake Fluid Low Brake System Brake System

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system. 	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Comes on while driving - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	*1 (S) Check System (B) Check System *2 (I) Brake System Problem Electric Parking Brake Problem Brake Hold System Problem
		Comes on if the parking brake and brake system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing *2 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	 Models with CMBS Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 451 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	-
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	₽ Automatic Brake Hold P. 521	Brake Hold ***BRAKE System Standby
(A)	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	₽ Automatic Brake Hold P. 521	_
77	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place. ☐ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 645	*1 Oil Pressure Low *2 Check Engine Oil Level

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

^{*} Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
۲	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	 Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 646 	*1 Check System *2 Emissions System Problem
÷	Charging System Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	Comes on while driving - Turn off the heating and cooling system*/ climate control system* and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption. ☐ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 645	*1 Check System *2 12 Volt Battery Charging System Problem
D	Shift Lever Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift lever position.	▶ Shifting P. 463, 465	_

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Transmission System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	*1 Check System *2 Transmission System Problem
S ^M 2	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	 Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	▶ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 467	_

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
R	eat Belt eminder idicator	 Malaysian models Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. Except Malaysian models Blinks and the beeper sounds for a few seconds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON, then the indicator comes on. Taiwanese models Blinks while driving if you have not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. Except Taiwanese models If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	 The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger* fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the front passenger* has fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ■ Seat Belt Reminder P. 48 	Fasten Seat Belt *1 Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Fuel Indicator	 Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.0 litres left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	 Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	*1 Check Fuel Gauge System *2 Fuel Low Fuel Gauge System Fuel Gauge System Problem
(ABS)	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no antilock function. Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 523 	*1 Check System *2 Anti-Lock Brake System Problem

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: Supplemental restraint system Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Check System *2 Airbag System (SRS) Problem

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

109

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or hill start assist system. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 506	*1 Check System Check System *2 Vahicle Stability Assist (VSA) Problem Hill Start Assist Problem
	Indicator	Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing *2 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
—	Vehicle	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when you partially disable VSA. 	VSA On and Off P. 507	*1 Vehicle Stability Assist OFF *2 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF
ÖFF	(VSA) OFF Indicator	 Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing *2 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Door Open Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if any door is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door is opened while driving. 	Goes off when all doors are closed.	_
4	Tailgate Open Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds if you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if the tailgate is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if tailgate is opened while driving. 		_
⊕!	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. 	Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 649	*1 Check System *2 Power Steering System (EFS) Problem

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
<u>(!)</u>	Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been calibrated. 	 Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be calibrated. ▶ TPMS Initialisation P. 514 	(土) Tire Pressures Low
		 Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS. 	Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	Tire Pressure Monitor Problem
		Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	 Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	Drive Carefully Systems Initializing

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
i	System Message Indicator*	Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	 While the indicator is on, press the (display/information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the button is pressed. 	_
4 •	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	 Blink when you operate the turn signal lever. Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	• Does not blink or blinks rapidly ▶ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 584	-
		 Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	Emergency Stop Signal P. 525	
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	_	-
≥0 0∈	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	► Light Switches P. 210	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
钓	Front Fog Light Indicator*	 Comes on when the front fog lights are on. 	_	-
() ‡	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	-	-
		Comes on if there is a problem with the light control system.	• Comes on while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	-
<u></u>	Light Control Indicator*	Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights.	 Comes on while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible. 	-
≣A	Auto High- Beam Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	▶ Auto High-Beam* P. 217	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	 Blinks- You cannot start the engine. Depress the brake pedal, then set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	_
Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	≥ Security System Alarm P. 196	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
٦įؖۄ	Keyless Access System Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	_
*	ECON Mode Indicator	Comes on when ECON mode is on.	▶ ECON Button P. 469	SECON ON
CRUISE MAIN	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	• Comes on when you press the CRUISE button.	☑ Cruise Control* P. 470, 473	-
CRUISE CONTROL	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	• Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control.	☑ Cruise Control* P. 470, 473	-
(1)	Starter System Indicator*	Comes on when the starting system has a problem.	 As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. 	_
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	Comes on when the steering wheel is locked.	 Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button. 	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
†P	Shift to Park Indicator*	 Blinks if you push the ENGINE START/ STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	• Push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P.	_
	Brake Depressing	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Electric Parking Brake System Blinks when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	• Blinks while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ▶ Parking Brake P. 517	_
* W	Indicator*	 Automatic Brake Hold System Blinks when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds. 	 Blinks while driving - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ■ Automatic Brake Hold P. 521 Immediately depress the brake pedal. 	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system. 	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Check System *2 Road Departure Mitigation System Problem
<i>G</i> /		Comes on if the road departure mitigation is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing. *2 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing.

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure	Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.	• Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the heating and cooling system*/ climate control system* to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. Front Sensor Camera* P. 477	*1 *2 Source Oriver Assist Systemic Cannot Cheratic Control Temperature Too Nigh
	Mitigation Indicator*		 Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. Front Sensor Camera* P. 477 	* 1 * 2 Some Driver Axrist Systems Cannot Operate Clean Front Windshield

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.	 Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover. Radar Sensor P. 479 	*1 *2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate Radar Obstructed
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ Load Limit P. 451 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	_

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF. 	Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 ACC Check System *2 ACC Adaptive Cruise Control Problem
ACC		 Comes on if the ACC with LSF is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing *2 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 451 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	-

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)*	Comes on when you press the MAIN button.	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479	-
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 LAS Check System *2 Lane Keeping Assist Problem
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	Comes on when you press the MAIN button.	■ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 498	-

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
₹	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS. 	Stays on constantly without the CMBS off - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 526	*1 CMBS OFF Check System *2 Collision Militigation Braking System oFF Collision Militigation System Problem
		Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	*1 Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing *2 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision	Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off.	• Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ■ Front Sensor Camera* P. 477 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera.	*2 *2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield
***************************************	Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*		 Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover. Radar Sensor P. 479 	*2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
3 ₹⊋	Collision Mitigation Braking System	Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off.	• Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ■ Front Sensor Camera* P. 477	*1 *2 Some Grover Autil Systems Cannot Operatic Coners Tresperature Too High
	(CMBS) Indicator*	 Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ▶ Load Limit P. 451 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	-

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models
*2:Taiwanese models

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
CHECK → CHRRGE SYSTEM	 Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
POMER	 Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	• Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
IS ON	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	_
NOKEY	 Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON, without the keyless remote inside the vehicle. 	 Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. Keyless Remote Reminder P. 207
KEY BATT	Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.	 Replace the battery as soon as possible. ▶ Replacing the Button Battery P. 602

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 Door And Tailgate Open	 Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds. 	Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.
*1 *2 Parking Sensor System Check System Problem Models with rearview camera system	 Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red. 	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
*1 *2 Ouetside Temperature Low	 Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON. 	There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.

- *1:Except Taiwanese models
- *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 Check Charging System System Problem	 Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. 	 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ☑ Checking the Battery P. 599
*1 *2 Pedal Pedal	 Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. 	Immediately depress the brake pedal.
Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot	Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	Overheating P. 642
►p+D Fasten Seat Belt	Appears when you set the power mode to ON without fastening the driver's seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.
Brake Hold System OFF	• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	₽ Automatic Brake Hold P. 521

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
To Enable To Enable Frake Hold: Seat Belt + Push	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the driver's seat belt. ▶ Automatic Brake Hold P. 521
To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push	 Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. 	 Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. Automatic Brake Hold P. 521
(P) Parking Brake Engaged	 Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation. 	D Automatic Brake Hold P. 521 D Parking Brake P. 517
To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push	 Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	 Appears while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ▶ Parking Brake P. 517
*1 *2 Critical System Failure Detected. Stop Driving When Safe *2 Critical Failure Detected. Stop Driving When Safe When Safe	Appears if there is something wrong with the vehicle while you are driving.	Immediately stop in a safe place.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- *1:Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message		Condition	Explanation
Brake To Keep Br Vehicle Ar		e shift position cannot be changed o a problem with the vehicle.	 Apply the parking brake once you have stopped. Parking Brake P. 517 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
୍ୟାଣି Check System ୍ୟାଣି Sy Pri ke		oon as a problem is detected in the is system or keyless starting system.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Remote Not Re		en you close the door with the e on without the keyless remote hicle.	 The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door. Keyless Remote Reminder P. 207
Keyless	becomes we	en the keyless remote battery ak.	 Replace the battery as soon as possible. ▶ Replacing the Button Battery P. 602

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
rion + ⊚ To Start Engine: Brake + Push	 Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	Starting the Engine P. 455
Accessory Mode	Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.	_
*1 *2 To Turn Vehicle Off: Push Twice To Switch Vehicle OFF: Push Twice	Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY.	• Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. ■ ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 205
To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button	 Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times. 	 Bring the keyless remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button to be touched with. If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 636
*1 *2 (1) Check System Starter System Problem	Appears when the starting system has a problem.	As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal. Then manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 To Unlock © + ($\stackrel{\circ}{\otimes}$) Wheel: Push + Turn *2 To Unlock © + ($\stackrel{\circ}{\otimes}$) Wheel: Push + Rotate	Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	 Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.
g 🖸 Shift To Park	 Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the gear position to P. 	 Change the gear position to P, then push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice.
To Start Engine: Shift To Park	 Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button and the parking brake is not activated or change the gear position to N. 	 Change the gear position to P position and start the engine.
*1 Driver Attention Level Low. Take A Rest *2 Driver Attention Level Low. Take A Rest *2 Driver Attention Level Low. Time For A Break	 Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. 	☑ Driver Attention Monitor P. 152

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Models with CMBS

Message	Condition	Explanation
ACC OFF 80 km/h	 Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. 	 You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button. ➡ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
*1 *2 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High	 Appears when ACC with LSF is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed. 	 Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with LSF. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
*1 *2 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High Cannot High Speed Too High	 Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with LSF. 	 Reduce the speed, then set ACC with LSF. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
Cruise Cancelled Cancelled Too Close To Vehicle Ahead	 Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation. 	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. ➡ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
Cannot Set Cruise: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead	• Appears when pressing the -/SET button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
Cannot Set Cruise: Fasten Seat Belt	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
*1 *2 To Resume To Resume To Resume Cruise: Use 'RES/+' Switch	 Appears when the vehicle in front of you starts moving while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF. 	 Either press the RES/+ button or -/SET button, or depress the accelerator pedal. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
Cannot Set Cruise: Shift To Drive	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the gear is in any position other than D or S. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
*1 *1 Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep *2 *2 Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep *2 *2 Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep	 Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation. 	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479

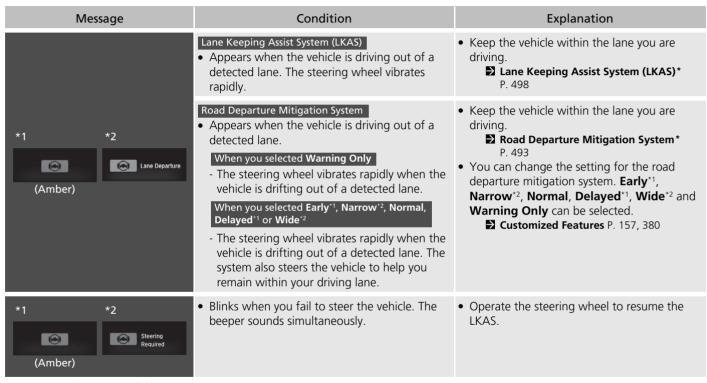
^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

	Me	ssage		Condition	Explanation
*2	Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep	*1 !@ *2	Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479
*1 (P)	Cruise Cancelled: Parking Brake Was Applied	*2 (P)	Cruise Cancelled: Parking Brake Is Applied	 Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation. 	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479 Parking Brake P. 517
	(P)	Cannot Set Cruise: Parking Brake Is Applied		 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the parking brake is applied. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479 Parking Brake P. 517
	₽D	Cannot Set Cruise: Brake Pedal Is Applied		 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Message		Condition	Explanation
*1 Cruise Cancelled: Depress Brake Pedal	*2 Cruise Cancelled: Apply Brake Pedal	 Appears if ACC with LSF is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF. 	Immediately depress the brake pedal.
*1 全!	*2 BRAKE	Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	 Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 526

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models



- *1:Except Taiwanese models
- *2:Taiwanese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 Road Departure Mitigation Activated (White)	Road Departure Mitigation System When you selected Early*1 or Narrow*2 • Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	_
*1 *2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed	 Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	 When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* P. 479 Road Departure Mitigation System* P. 493 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 526
*1 *2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Departe: Clames Temperature Too High	Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and the some driver assist systems cannot be activated.	 Use the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* to cool down the camera. Disappears - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. Front Sensor Camera* P. 477 Auto High-Beam* P. 217

- *1:Except Taiwanese models
 *2:Taiwanese models
- * Not available on all models

139

Mes	sage	Condition	Explanation
*1	*2 Some Driver Assist Syriens Cannot Operate Clean Front Windshield	 Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	 When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. ▶ Front Sensor Camera* P. 477 ▶ Auto High-Beam* P. 217
* 1	*2 Light Control System Problem	Appears if there is a problem with the light control system.	Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Models with LED headlights

Message		Condition	Explanation
*1 Check Headlights	*2	 Appears if there is a problem with the headlights. 	 Appears while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

- *1:Except Taiwanese models
- *2:Taiwanese models

Models with power tailgate

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 Check System Power Tailgate Problem	Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.	Manually open or close the power tailgate.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- *1:Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Models with All-wheel drive (AWD)

Message	Condition	Explanation
AVID Check System	 Appears if there is a problem with the AWD system. 	The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Stop Driving When Safe. AWD Temperature Too Hot	Appears when the differential temperature is too high.	 Stop in a safe place, change to P, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* P. 511

Models with transmission temperature display

Message	Condition	Explanation
Transmission Temperature Near Limit. Performance May Be Reduced	Appears when the transmission fluid temperature is near limit.	 Acceleration performance is reduced to allow the transmission to cool down. Avoid aggressive starts, rapid acceleration, and high-speed driving. Once the transmission has cooled down, the message will disappear.

Models with oil monitor system

Message	Condition	Explanation
Engine Oil Engine Oil Replacement And Filter Due Soon Due Soon	 Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. 	 The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed soon. ➡ Oil Monitor System* P. 557
Engine Oil Engine Oil Replacement And Filter Due Now Due Now	 Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due. 	 The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed as soon as possible. ➡ Oil Monitor System* P. 557
*1 *2 Engine Oil Replacement Overdue Engine Oil Replacement Past Due Engine Oil Replacement Past Due Engine Oil And Filler Replacement Overdue Replacement Past Due	Appears when the scheduled engine oil change is passed due.	 The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter should be changed immediately. ☑ Oil Monitor System* P. 557

^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models *2:Taiwanese models

Models with auto high-beam system

Message	Condition	Explanation
*1 *2 EA Check System Auto High-Beam Problem	 Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam system. 	 Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.

- *1:Except Taiwanese models
 *2:Taiwanese models

Taiwanese models with panoramic roof

Message	Condition	Explanation
Seat Beit E-Pretensioner System Problem	 Appears if there is a problem with the e- pretensioner system. 	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with second row seatbelt reminder

Message	Condition	Explanation
# <mark>#</mark> # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	 Appears for about 30 seconds when any of the second row seat belts are fastened or unfastened, or either rear door is opened and closed. 	Seat Belt Reminder P. 48

Gauges and Displays

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

∑Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

∑Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

Overheating P. 642

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, and other gauges.

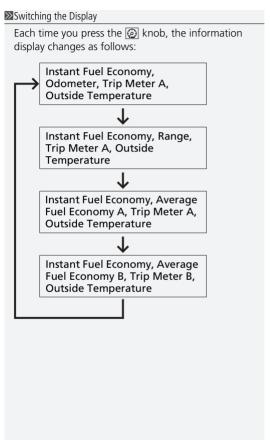
Switching the Display

Press the (TRIP) knob to change the display.



Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.



■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Continued 147

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

- **1.** Set the power mode to ON.
- **2.** Press and hold the (TRIP) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
 - ► The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -3°C to +3°C.
- **3.** Release the 😥 knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
 - ► The adjustment is complete.

≥ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Driver Information Interface*

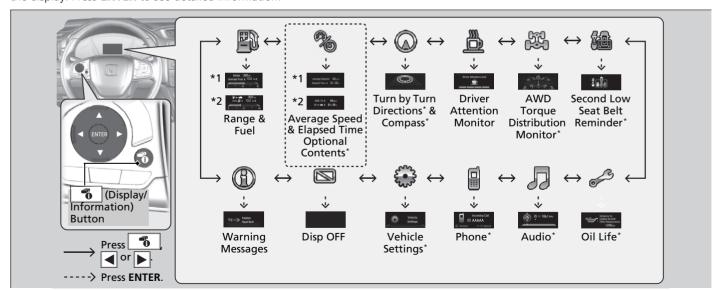
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

■ Main displays

Press the display/information) button, and then press or to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.

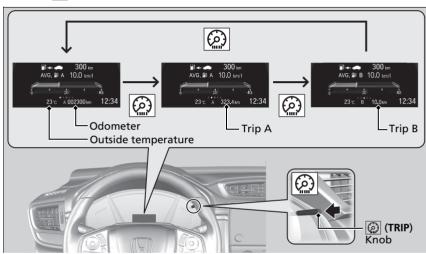


- *1:Except Taiwanese models
- *2:Taiwanese models
- * Not available on all models

149

■ Trip computer

Press the ((TRIP) knob to change display.



Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

∑Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the skinob.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

■ Engine Oil Life*

Shows the remaining oil life.

☑ Oil Monitor System* P. 557

* Not available on all models

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Customized Features P. 157, 380

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

≧ Customized Features P. 157, 380

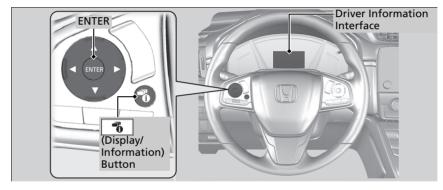
■ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

⊇ Customized Features P. 157, 380

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.





When the (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

Switching the Display P. 149

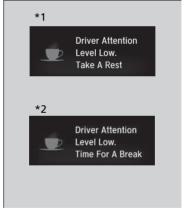
Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.

Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



If two bars light up, the **Driver Attention Level Low** message will appear.



Level Low. Take A Rest*1 or Driver Attention Level Low. Time For A Break*2 message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate. If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed. The message will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally. If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations. The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

- *1: Except Taiwanese models
- *2: Taiwanese models

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the engine is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

- the vehicle must be traveling above 40 km/h.
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.

- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* is active.
 ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 498
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**, or **Off**.

■ Customized Features P. 157, 380

≫ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}$ C if the temperature reading seems incorrect

■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*



The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels

Second Low Seat Belt Reminder*

Appears when any of the second low seat belts are fastened or unfastened.

■Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the driver information interface's or audio/information screen's customized features to correct the temperature.

Customized Features P. 157, 380

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Audio*

Show the current audio information.

▶ Audio System Basic Operation P. 316

■ Phone*

Show the current phone information.

▶ Hands-Free Telephone System P. 427

∑Turn-by-Turn Directions *

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

Customized Features P. 380

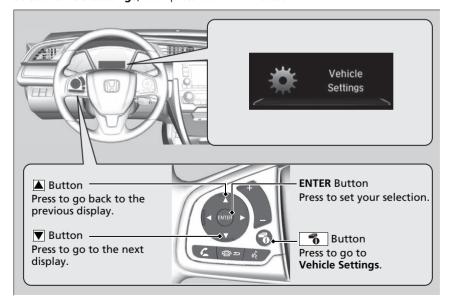
Models with colour audio system

Customized Features

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Select the **Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the button while the power mode is in ON, and the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in P. Select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.



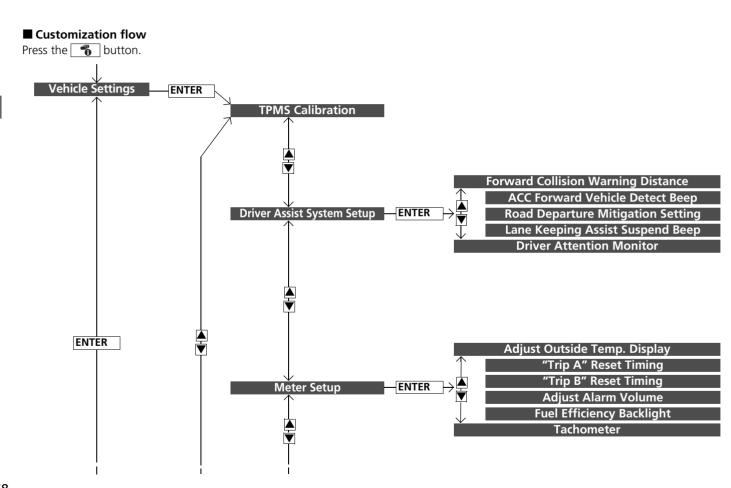
∑Customized Features

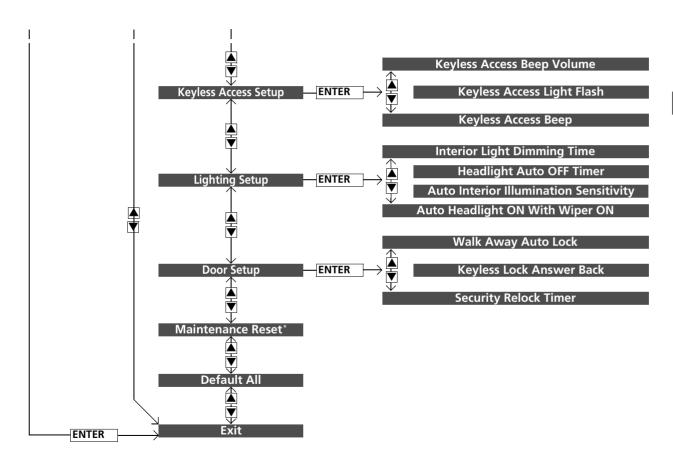
To customize other features, press the / v

- List of customizable options P. 160
- **Example of customization settings** P. 163

When you customize settings: Shift to P.

Continued 157





■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	-	Calibrates the TPMS.	Cancel/Calibrate
	Forward Collision Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Long/Normal*1/Short
Driver Assist System	ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	ON/OFF*1
Road Departure Mitigation Setting Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning Only	
		Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	ON/OFF*1
	Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	Tactile And Audible Alert*1/ Tactile Alert/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset*1
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset*1
	Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	High/Mid*1/Low
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	ON*1/OFF
Keyless	Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	High*¹/Low
Access Setup	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF
	Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	ON*1/OFF

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec*1/15sec
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec
Lighting Setup	Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	Max/High/Mid* ¹ /Low/Min
	Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	ON*1/OFF
	Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	ON/OFF*1
Door Setup	Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	ON*1/OFF
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec*1
Maintenance Reset*	_	Resets the oil monitor display when you have performed the maintenance service.	Cancel/Reset
Default All	_	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Cancel/Set

^{*1:} Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models

■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**



1. Press the **b** button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.



- 2. Press the ▲ / ▼ button until Meter Setup appears on the display.
- 3. Press the ENTER button.
 - ► Adjust Outside Temp. Display appears first in the display.

Continued 163





➤ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select When Fully Refueled, IGN OFF, Manually Reset, or Exit.



- **5.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button and select **When** Fully **Refueled**, then press the **ENTER** button.
 - ➤ The When Fully Refueled Setup screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.



- **6.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **Exit** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
- **7.** Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock* 16	6
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key Types and Functions 16	8
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 17	0
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Outside 17	1
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Inside 17	9
Childproof Door Locks 18	0
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking * 18	1
Tailgate 18	5
Security System	
Immobilizer System19	5

Security System Alarmpening and Closing the Windows .	197
perating the Switches Around th	ne
iteering Wheel	
ENGINE START/STOP Button	205
Turn Signals	209
Light Switches	210
Front* and Rear* Fog Lights	214
Headlight Adjuster*	216
Auto High-Beam*	217
Daytime Running Lights	221

Wipers and Washers	222
Brightness Control	225
Rear Demister Button	227
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	228
Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	229
Power Door Mirrors	230
Adjusting the Seats	232
nterior Lights/Interior Convenier	nce
Items	252
leating* and Cooling System*	272
Climate Control System*	278

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

Adjusting the Time



Models with colour audio system

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

- Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button.
 Adjust clock is selected.
- **2.** Rotate ⊘ to change hour, then press ⊘.
- **3.** Rotate [♠] to change minute, then press [♠].
- **4.** To enter the selection, rotate 🗇 and select **Set**, then press 🕹 .

■ Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with colour audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

■ Customized Features P. 373

■Using the MENU/CLOCK button ■ The Mean of the

Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate 😙 to select.

Press 💍 to enter.



Models with Display Audio

- Using the Settings menu on the audio/ information screen
- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Clock Adjustment.
- **4.** Select **△** or **▼** to change hour.
- **5.** Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

≥ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

Customized Features P. 380

Models with Display Audio

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system. You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

- 1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
- 2. Select Clock Adjustment.
- 3. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
- 4. Select **▲** or **▼** to change minute, then select **OK**.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key Types and Functions

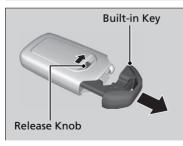
This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

■ Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

■ Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 195

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with remote engine start

You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start* P. 457

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

™Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

∑Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

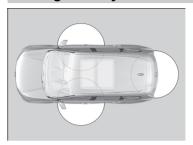
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Using the Keyless Access System

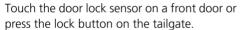
Door Lock

Sensor



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



➤ Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

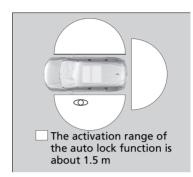
Interior Lights P. 252

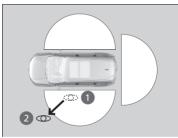
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).



Continued 171





■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock*)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

- **1.** While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
 - ➤ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
- **2.** Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
 - Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

∑Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock*)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Models with Display Audio

■ Customized Features P. 380

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 157

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors and tailgate are closed.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

- 1. Set the power mode to OFF.
- 2. Open the driver's door.
- **3.** Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:

 $\mathsf{Lock} \to \mathsf{Unlock} \to \mathsf{Lock} \to \mathsf{Unlock}.$

► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

■Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock*)

When all doors and tailgate have been closed and the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, or if the keyless remote is not detected within about 1.5 m of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

Models with power tailgate

If equipped, the user must wait until the power tailgate fully closes before the auto lock function will be activated.

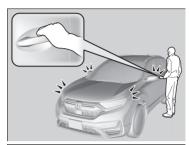
The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.
 If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.





■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the front door handle:

- ► All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

Press the tailgate outer handle:

- ► The tailgate and all doors unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.
- Using the Outer Handle P. 194

∑Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

>> Using the Keyless Access System

Models with driver information interface

The light flash and beep settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 380

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 157

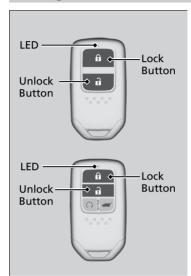
Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

Customized Features P. 380

Continued 175

Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors and tailgate Press the lock button.

Once:

Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

➤ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate Press the unlock button.

Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

≥Using the Remote Transmitter

Models with driver information interface

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

Models with Display Audio

EXECUTE 2 Customized Features P. 380

Models with colour audio system

■ Customized Features P. 157

The remote transmitter will not work when:

 The power mode is in other than VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Button Battery P. 602

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the keyless remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the keyless remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

∑Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

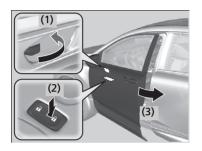
When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

Continued 177

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the remote key on you, or if the battery of the remote key is dead, you can lock the doors without a key.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward (1) or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction (2), then pull and hold the outside door handle (3). Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

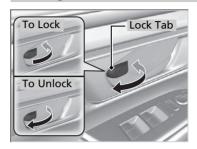
∑Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

≥ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.

► The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

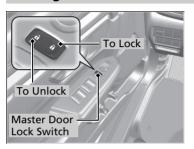
■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

Childproof Door Locks P. 180

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

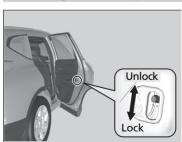
>> Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

∑Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

All doors and tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/ information screen.

➤ Customized Features P. 380

Models without Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

■ Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting* P. 182

* Not available on all models

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

■ List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description	
Drive Lock Mode*1	All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.	
Park Lock Mode	All doors and the tailgate lock when the brake pedal is depressed and the transmission is taken out of $\[P\]$.	
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.	

■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Park Unlock Mode*1	All doors and the tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into ${\bf P}$ with the brake pedal depressed.
Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	All doors and the tailgate unlock when the power mode is changed from ON.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

^{*1:} Default setting

^{*} Not available on all models

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode*1	Park Lock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Put the transmission into P.		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Set the power mode to ON.		
4	The transmission is taken out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	_	_
5	Press and hold the lock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. Press a the madriver's seconds.		Press and hold the lock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.
6	Put the transmission into P.	_	_
7	Set the power mode to OFF within 20 seconds. Customization is completed.		

^{*1:} Default setting

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Park Unlock Mode*1	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Put the transmission into P.		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Set the power mode to ON.		
4	_	The transmission is taken out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	_
5	Press and hold the unlock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. You will hear a click twice.		
6	_	Put the transmission into P.	_
7	Set the power mode to OFF within 20 seconds. Customization is completed.		

^{*1:} Default setting

Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
- Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98

AWARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

∑Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

AWARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

Using the Hands Free Access*



1 sec.

Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

■Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

≥Using the Hands Free Access *

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

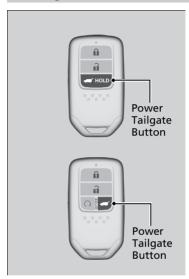
≧ Customized Features P. 380

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

The duration of the kicking motion should be approximately one second.

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

Models with Display Audio

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

■ Customized Features P. 380

Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

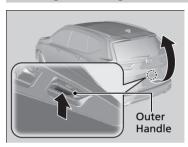
If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- ► The beeper sounds.
- ► If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.
- **▶ Tailgate** P. 185

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

>> Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

Customized Features P. 380

Using the Tailgate Inner Button



Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

► The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you press the power tailgate close button while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing, the power tailgate operation stops. Use caution if the tailgate stops in the middle of either operation. It may suddenly swing up or down.

■ Programming Tailgate Position





The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

- **1.** Open the tailgate to the desired position.
 - ▶ If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the next step.
- **2.** Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long buzzer.

▶ Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

▶ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

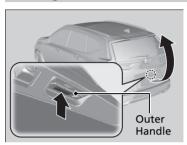
If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Using the Outer Handle



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked.

Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

≥ Using the Outer Handle

- Do not leave the key in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Security System

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ENGINE START/ STOP button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or using the keyless access system, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Opening and Closing the Windows

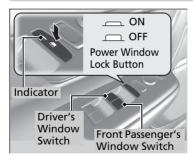
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly. **To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

○ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

AWARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

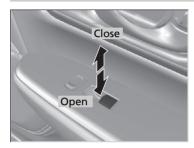
WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Continued 197

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down. **To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

∑Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

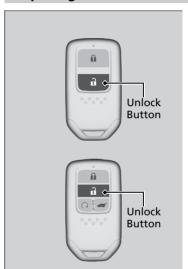
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

■ Opening Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Remote*



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed. If the windows and panoramic roof* stop midway, repeat the procedure.

Closing Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Key*



To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and panoramic roof* at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

∑Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

AWARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof or sunshade on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof and sunshade before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

WARNING: Extending the head, arms or other parts of the body through the panoramic roof while the vehicle is moving can cause serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

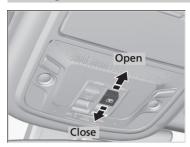
≥Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the panoramic roof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

- **Dopening Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Remote*** P. 199
- Closing Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Key* P. 200

Using the Sunshade Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly. **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Sunshade Switch Sunshade Switch

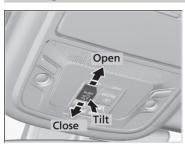
The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops slightly ahead of the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

Continued 203

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly. **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

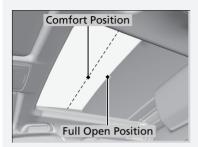
■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

∑Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

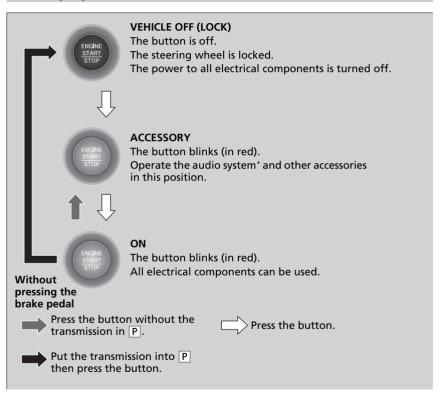
Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

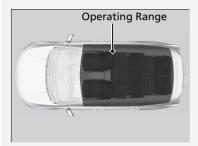
ENGINE START/STOP Button

■ Changing the Power Mode



■ ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

▶ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 636

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is red when the engine is running.

The power system may also start if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

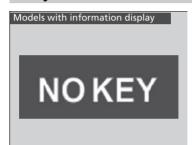
■ ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change. Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds

Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

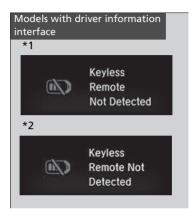
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Continued 207



- *1: Taiwanese models
- *2: Except Taiwanese models

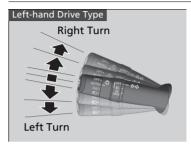
■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Turn Signals

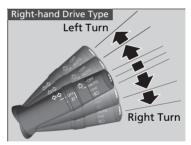


The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ One-touch turn signal

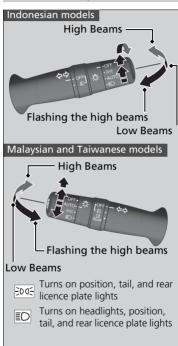
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.



Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Malaysian and Taiwanese models

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

∑Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Indicators P. 102

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



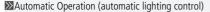
Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

Malaysian and Taiwanese models

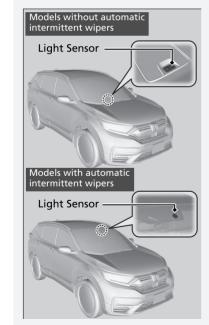
The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.



We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.





■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

Indonesian models with Display Audio

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at	
Max	Bright	
High	Біідіі	
Mid		
Low	Dark	
Min	20.10	

Customized Features P. 380

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF(LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

Models with driver information interface

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting. Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 380 Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 157

Front* and Rear* Fog Lights

■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

■ Front and Rear Fog Lights*



■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the $\{(1)\}$ position. The $\{(1)\}$ indicator comes on.

■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on Rotate the switch one position up from the ∜ position. The ∜ and () indicators come on.

■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch one position up from the $\cancel{1}$ position and then rotate the switch one position down from the $\cancel{1}$ position. The $\cancel{1}$ indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

■ Front Fog Lights*



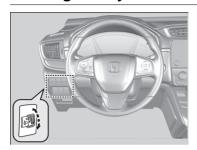
■ To turn the front fog lights on Rotate the switch to \$○. The \$○ indicator comes on.

■ Rear Fog Light*



■ To turn the rear fog light on Rotate the switch to ()‡. The ()‡ indicator comes on.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the power mode is in ON.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	U
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

Models with automatic headlight adjuster system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models without LED headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No. 48 Dover Regulation.

The headlights are suitable for both right and left hand traffic.

You do not need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

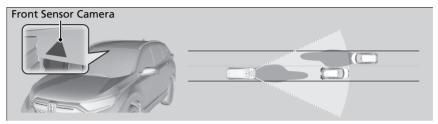
Models with LED headlights

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution P. 516

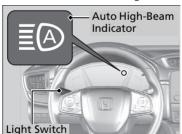
Auto High-Beam*

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

* Not available on all models

■ Auto High-Beam *

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 28 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.



- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

∑How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto highbeam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to D and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

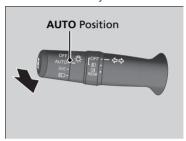
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to **■**O.

To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

■ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, set the power mode to ON, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



To turn the system off:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

To turn the system on:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

• The power mode is in ON.

Malaysian and Taiwanese models

• The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Indonesian models

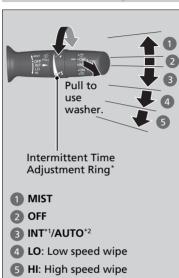
• The headlight switch is in **AUTO** or **OFF**.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*1/AUTO*2, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen. then stop.

Wipers and Washers ■

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

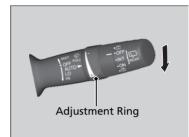
If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (14) and the **LO** setting become the same.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

- *1: Models with manual intermittent operation
- *2: Models with automatic intermittent operation
- * Not available on all models

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



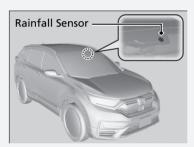
Low Sensitivity

High Sensitivity

Wipers and Washers ■

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



1 INT: Intermittent

2 ON: Continuous wipe

OFF

4 Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (🛱)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) HI (High speed wipe)	Continuous

Brightness Control



When the brightness of the meter will be reduced, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness. **Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right. **Dim:** Turn the knob to the left

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness Control

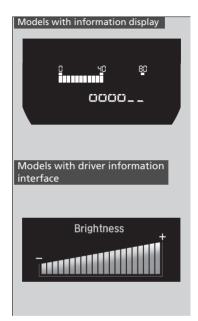
Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

When it is bright outside and the headlight integration with the wiper is activated, the instrument panel brightness does not change.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Continued 225



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display* or driver information interface* while you are adjusting it.

Rear Demister Button

■ Rear Demister Button

Press the rear demister button to defog the rear window when the power mode is in ON.



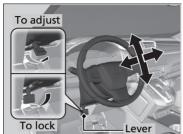
The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- **1.** Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
- ► The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
- **2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - ► Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- **3.** Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - ➤ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

∑Adjusting the Steering Wheel

AWARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

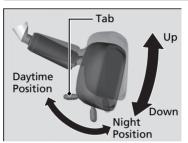
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Adjusting the Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.

The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

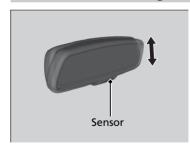
■ Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Front Seat P. 232

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



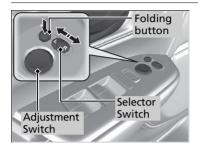
When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

Touch the door lock button on either front door or the tailgate twice within 10 seconds.

► The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter. Open the driver's door

► The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Grab the door handle on either front door and unlock all doors. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

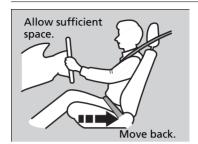
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Seats

Front Seat



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

■ Adjusting the Seats

AWARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

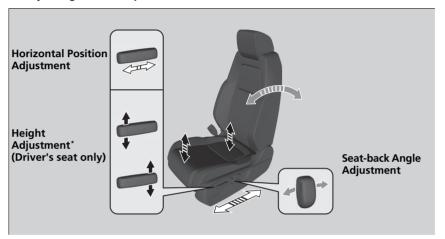
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat*





■ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch*

Press the top: To move the lumbar support

up.

Press the bottom: To move the lumbar

support down.

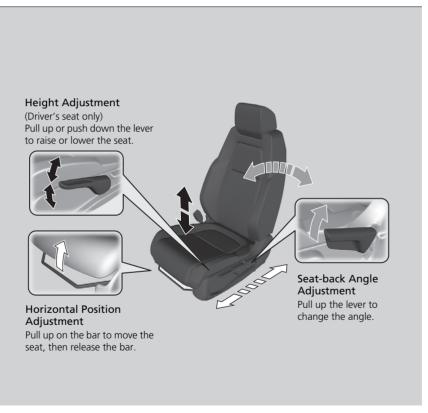
Press the front: To increase the entire

lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar

support.

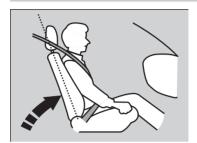
■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



∑Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

AWARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Second Row Seats

Adjusting the Seat Positions



Second Row Seats

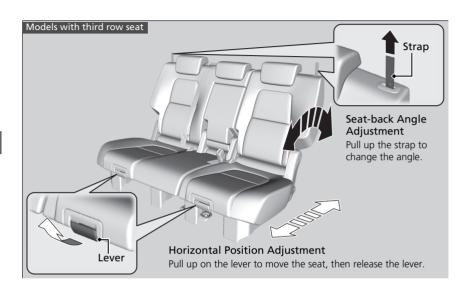
AWARNING

An unsecured seat or seat-back can move out of position or collapse without warning if there is sudden acceleration or stop or in a crash.

A seat or seat-back that suddenly moves or collapses can result in severe injury or death.

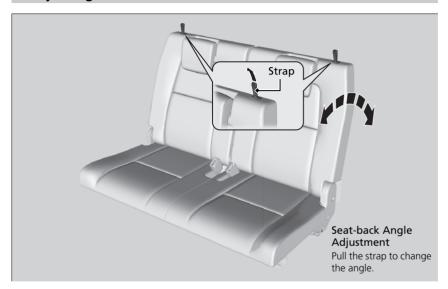
Always make sure all seats and seatbacks are securely locked into position before driving.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



Third Row Seats*

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



Third Row Seats *

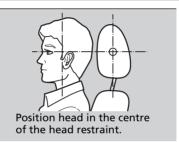
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

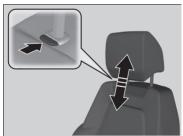
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rearimpact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward. **To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

∑Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

AWARNING

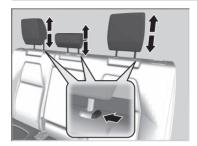
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Second Row Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the second row seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

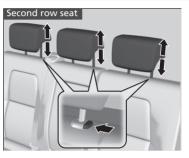
Manging the Second Row Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the second row centre seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Continued 241

■ Changing the Second Row and Third Row Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the second row and third row seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button(s).

Changing the Second Row and Third Row Seat Head Restraint
Position

When you use the head restraint in the second row and third row seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.





Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

AWARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

AWARNING

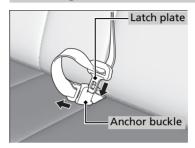
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

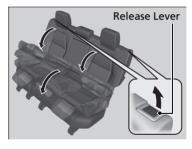
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seats

Models without third row seat

■ Folding Down the Second Row Seats





- **1.** Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
- **2.** Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
 - Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*
 P 54
- **3.** Lower the second row seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.

From the second row seat side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

∑Folding Down the Second Row Seats

AWARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 98

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

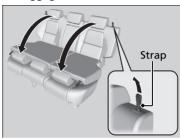


From the luggage area side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

■ Folding Down the Second Row Seat

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the second row seat to make room for luggage.



- **1.** Lower the centre head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seatback.
- **2.** Pull up on the seat-back angle adjustment strap.

To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.

∑Folding Down the Second Row Seat

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the second row seats as they fold down.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

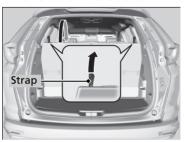
Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

Continued 247

■ Folding Down the Third Row Seat

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the third row seat to make room for luggage.

■ To fold down the seat



- **1.** Lower the third row seat head restraint to its lowest position.
- 2. Pull the strap on the seat-back fully.
- **3.** Push the seat-back forward while pulling the strap.
 - ▶ If you want to use the luggage area flatly, put the floor lid in the upper position.
 - **≥ Luggage Storage Area** P. 259

■ To return the seat to the original position



- **1.** Pull the seat-back up with the strap pulled.
- **2.** Pull the head restraint up to its original position.

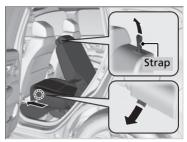
∑Folding Down the Third Row Seat

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the third row seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

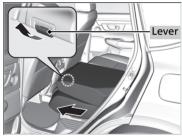
∑To return the seat to the original position

Make sure the seat-back and head restraints are securely latched back into place before driving.

■ Third Row Seat Access



- **1.** Lower the second row seat head restraint to its lowest position.
- **2.** Pull up the strap that is located at the shoulder of the seat, and fold down the seat-back.



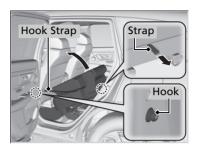
3. While pulling the lever, move the entire seat forward.

>> Third Row Seat Access

When you enter the third row seat, be careful not to trip over the second row seat belt.

The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the second row seats as they fold down

Continued 249



- **4.** Lift up the entire seat while pulling up the strap on the seat.
- **5.** Hang the hook strap that is located next to the seat to the pillar, and fix it.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest. **To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

■ Using the Second Row Seat Armrest

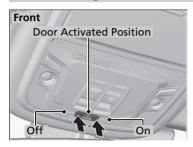


Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches





ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

Models with driver information interface

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with Display Audio

⊇ Customized Features P. 380

Models with colour audio system

■ Customized Features P. 157

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

When the interior light switch is in ON, if you close all doors in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 30 minutes. However, when the battery is weaken, the interior lights go off after about 30 minutes if any door is open.

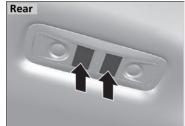
If you leave any doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

■ Map Lights



■ Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.



■ Second row seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

™Map Lights

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the button.

■ Luggage Area Light(S)



The light comes on when you open the tailgate.



Interior Convenience Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Solove Box

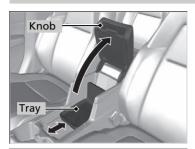
AWARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

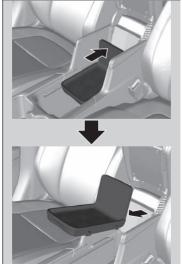
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

257

■ Centre Console Box



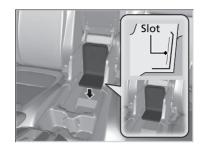
To open, pull the knob. You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.



■ Removing the tray

1. Slide the tray back.

2. Lift the edge of the tray up slightly, then pull it out.



Storing the tray:

Line the tray up with the slots located at the rear section of the console box, and then push it down all the way until it is in the locked position.

Except Taiwanese models

■ Luggage Storage Area



Models without third row seat

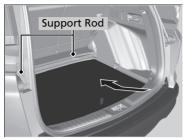
■ When putting the floor lid in the bottom position

This is convenient when storing a tall item.

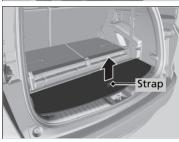
1. Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.



- 2. Pull the strap upwards to lift the floor lid.
- **3.** Pull the floor lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.



4. Push the far end of the floor lid down to the bottom under the support rod, then lower the other end.





Models with third row seat

■ When putting the floor lid in the upper position

By pushing the third row seat forward and putting the floor lid in the upper position, you can store bulkier items in the luggage area.

- **1.** Folding down the third row seat.
 - ► Folding Down the Third Row Seat
 P. 248
- 2. Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.
- **3.** Pull the floor lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.
- **4.** Put the floor lid in the upper position, then slide it to the end.

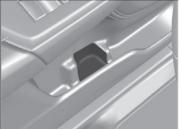
261

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



■ Second row seat beverage holders

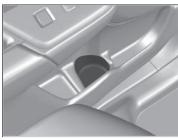
Fold the armrest down to use the second row seat beverage holders.

≥ Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ Rear door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.



Models with third row seat

■ Third row seat beverage holders

Pull up the beverage holder to use it. You can adjust the beverage holder angle depending on size the beverage.

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



Accessory power socket in the console compartment

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

■ Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

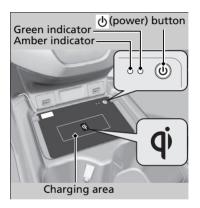
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the power socket.

Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



- 1. To turn the system on*1 and off, press and hold the **(** power) button.
 - ► When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
- **2.** Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - ► The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - ► Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
- **3.** When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger[∗]

AWARNING

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.



Burn risk:

Any metal object placed between pad and device may become hot.

*1: Default setting

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the centre of the charging area where 🌗 is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger[∗]

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

"Qi" and 🌗 marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic wave or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the tailgate are closed to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

Coat Hook

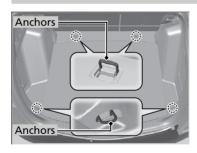


There is a coat hook on the rear left* or right* grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

○ Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Tie-down Anchors*



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

∑Tie-down Anchors *

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Luggage Hooks*



The luggage hooks on both sides of the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

∑Luggage Hooks*

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

■ Luggage Area Cover*



The luggage area cover can be used to conceal items in the luggage area and protect them from direct sunlight.

■ To extend:

Slightly lift up on the handle at the centre edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.

■ To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.

■Luggage Area Cover *

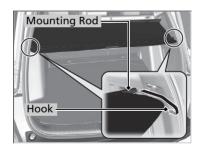
Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:

- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear luggage cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.



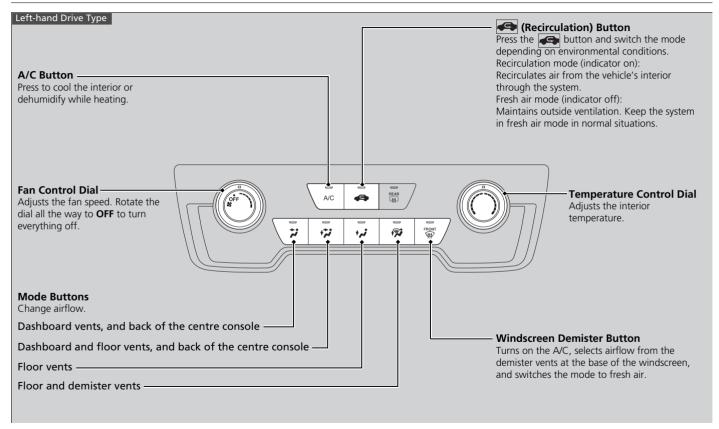


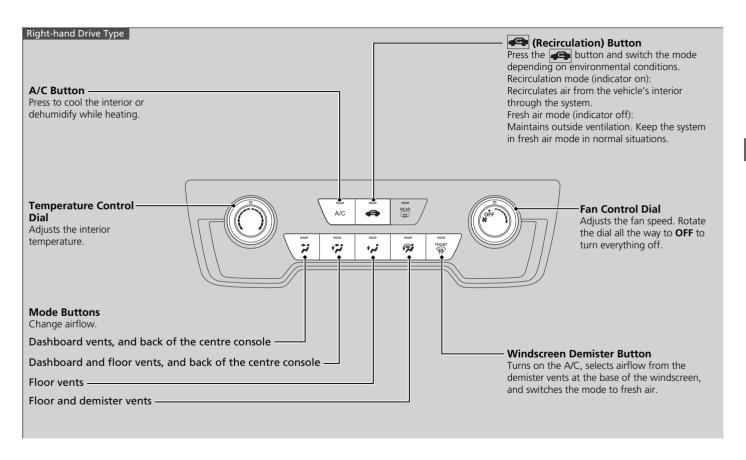
■ To remove:

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

Heating* and Cooling System*

Using Vents, Heating and A/C





Heating*



The heater uses heat from the engine coolant to warm the air.

- **1.** Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
- **3.** Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.



■ To rapidly warm up the interior

- **1.** Set the fan to the maximum speed.
- 2. Select .
- **3.** Set the temperature to maximum high.
- **4.** Press the button (indicator on).

∑To rapidly warm up the interior

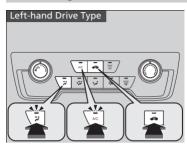
Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.

■ To dehumidify the interior

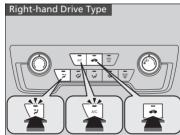
When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

- **1.** Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
- 2. Press the A/C button to turn on the air conditioning system.
- 3. Select .
- **4.** Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
- **5.** Press the button (the indicator off).

Cooling



- **1.** Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
- **2.** Select .
- **3.** Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
- **4.** Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).



■ To rapidly cool down the interior

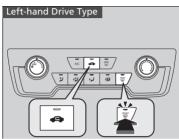
- **1.** Set the fan to the maximum speed.
- **2.** Select **7.** .
- **3.** Set the temperature to maximum low.
- **4.** Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).
- **5.** Press the button (indicator on).

∑To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

While in the ECON mode, the system has greater temperature fluctuations.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.



■ To rapidly defrost the windows

- **1.** Set the fan to the maximum speed.
- 2. Press the button (indicator on).
- **3.** Press the button (indicator on).
- **4.** Set the temperature to maximum high.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

∑To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Climate Control System*

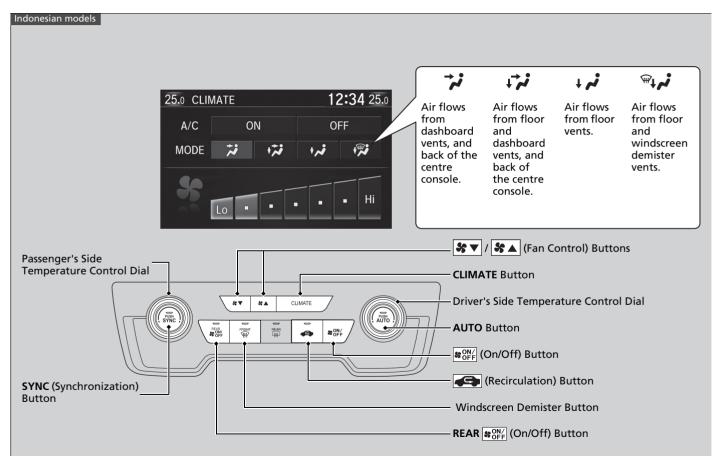
Using Automatic Climate Control

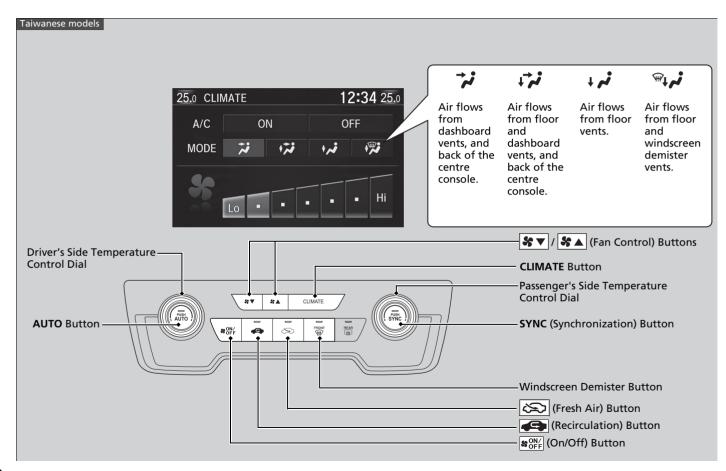
The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

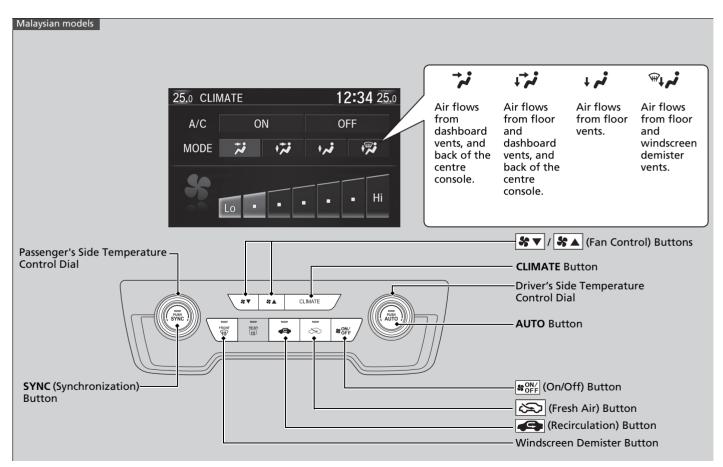
■ Using Automatic Climate Control

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display A/C, MODE, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off A/C, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.







Use the system when the engine is running.

- **1.** Press the **AUTO** button.
- 2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.
- 3. Press the SON/ (on/off) button to cancel.

∑Using Automatic Climate Control

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Indonesian models

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

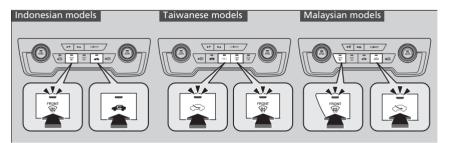
Taiwanese and Malaysian models

Press the (recirculation) or (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Indonesian models

Press the would button to turn the air conditioning system on. Select the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

Press the button to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Taiwanese and Malaysian models

Pressing the button turns the air conditioning system on. Select the button to switch the system to fresh air mode.

Press the button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

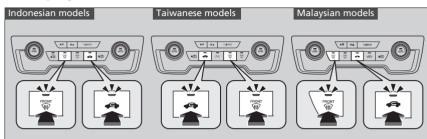
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

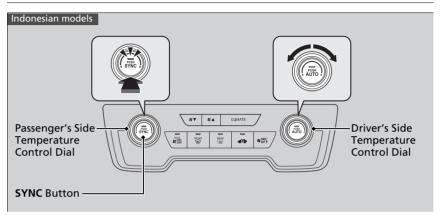


- **1.** Press the button (indicator on).
- **2.** Press the button (indicator on).

∑To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

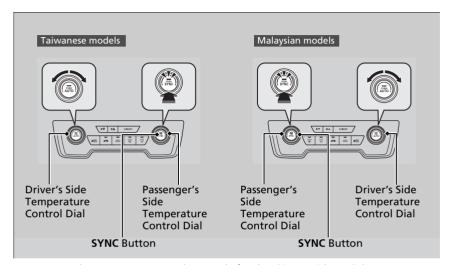
Synchronization Mode



Synchronization Mode

When you press the button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is not in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

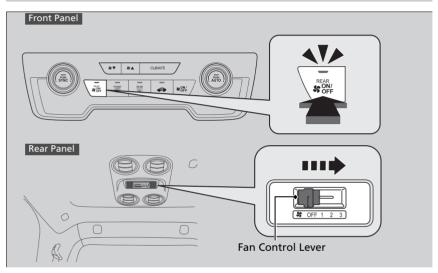
- 1. Press the **SYNC** button.
 - ▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
- **2.** Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

Indonesian models

Rear Cooler Control System

■ Using the Rear Cooler Control System From the Front Panel

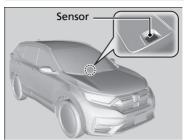


Use the system when the engine is running.

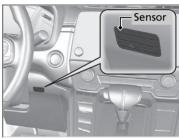
Turn on the **REAR** sold button on the front control panel, adjust the fan speed using the fan control lever.

Turn off the system, when the slide fan control lever to **OFF**, or turn off the **REAR** solve button on the front control panel cancel.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





Audio System*	292
Models with colour audio system	
Audio System Basic Operation	
Audio/Information Screen	299
Adjusting the Sound	303
Display Setup	304
Playing AM/FM Radio	305
Playing an iPod	307
Playing a USB Flash Drive	310
Playing Bluetooth® Audio	313

udio System Basic Operation	
Audio/Information Screen	317
Adjusting the Sound	338
Display Setup	339
Playing AM/FM Radio	341
Playing an iPod	343
Playing a USB Flash Drive	346
Playing Bluetooth® Audio	349
Smartphone Connection	351
Wi-Fi Connection	354
Siri Eyes Free	356
Apple CarPlay*	357

Android Auto* Audio Error Messages	
General Information on the Audio	
System	. 367
Models with colour audio system	
Customized Features	. 373
Models with Display Audio	
Customized Features	. 380
Models with colour audio system	
Hands-Free Telephone System	. 406
Models with Display Audio	
Hands-Free Telephone System	. 427

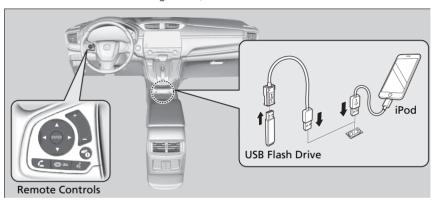
* Not available on all models

Audio System*

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

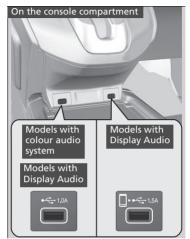
You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.

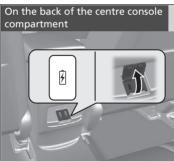


■ About Your Audio System

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

USB Port(s)





The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

Models with Display Audio

The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*.

➤ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ On the back of the centre console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

SUSB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.5A/2.5A unless requested by the device.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

On the back of the centre console compartment

These ports are for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to them.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

Auxiliary Input Jack*

Use the jack to connect devices.



Connect a device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.

➤ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

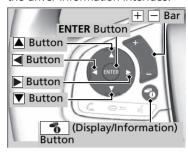
■ Auxiliary Input Jack*

To switch to another mode or return to the AUX mode, press the **MEDIA** button.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

Models with colour audio system

FM1→FM2→AM→USB/iPod→ Bluetooth® Audio→AUX

Models with Display Audio

FM→AM→USB→iPod→Bluetooth® Audio→ Apps→Audio Apps*

Models with Display Audio

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- **2.** Press \triangle or $\overline{\lor}$ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
- **2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
- 3. Press ENTER to display a list of tracks in that folder.
- **4.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with Display Audio

Press the (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command. Press the (Display/information) button to switch display.

Switching the Display P. 317

- When listening to an iPod
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
- **2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
- **3.** Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
 - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.
- When listening to Bluetooth® Audio
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.
- **2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

+ - (Volume) Bar

Press +: To increase the volume.

Press : To decrease the volume.

■ Buttons

• When listening to the radio

Press To select the next preset radio station.

Press To select the previous preset radio station.

Press and hold To select the next strong station.

Press and hold : To select the previous strong station.

• When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio

Press To skip to the next song.

Press To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

• When listening to a USB flash drive

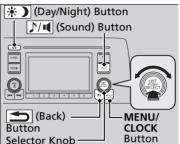
Press and hold To skip to the next folder.

Press and hold To go back to the previous folder.

Audio System Basic Operation

Models with colour audio system

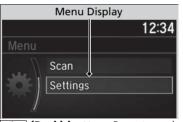
To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press 🗟 to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}$ to set your selection.



MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.

The available modes include wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

[]/| (Sound) button: Press to select the sound setting mode.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press the 🗱 🕽 button, then adjust the brightness using 😙 .

► Each time you press the ★) button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate 😚 to select.

Press 💍 to enter.

Menu Items

Adjust Clock P. 166

Wallpaper Setup P. 301

Adjusting the Sound P. 303

Display Setup P. 304

■ Customized Features P. 373

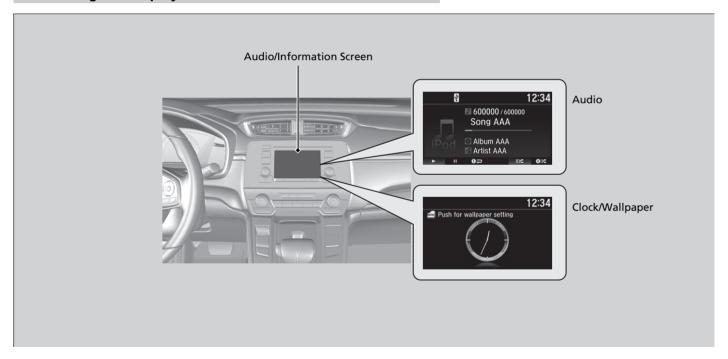
Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

Audio Remote Controls P. 295

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display



■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ Change display

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Settings**, then press ८.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Display change**, then press ८.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ८.
 - If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



- **1.** Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 - **USB Port(s)** P. 293
- 2. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Settings**, then press ⑤.
- **4.** Rotate ♂ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ૱.
- **5.** Rotate ③ to select **Import**, then press ⑤. ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
- **6.** Rotate '♥ to select a desired picture, then press ♥.
 - ► The selected picture is displayed.
- **7.** Press 🕹 to save the picture.
- 8. Press ♂ to select OK.
- **9.** Rotate ♥ to select a location to save the picture, then press ८.
 - ► The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, a message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

Continued 301

■ Select wallpaper

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Settings**, then press ८.
- **3.** Rotate $^{\mbox{\tiny{1}}}$ to select **Wallpaper**, then press $^{\mbox{\tiny{2}}}$.
- **4.** Rotate to select **Select**, then press .
 - ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Settings**, then press ८.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Display change**, then press ८.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ८.
- **5.** Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

■ Delete wallpaper

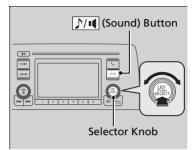
- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Settings**, then press ८.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ℧.
- **4.** Rotate ♂ to select **Delete**, then press ♂.
 - ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- **6.** Rotate $^{\circ}$ to select **Yes**, then press $^{\circ}$.
 - ► The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup ■ Mail Setup Weight Setup Weight

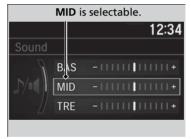
To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

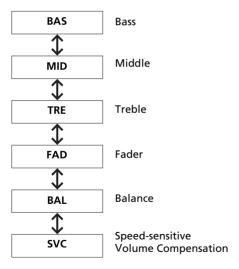
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound



Press the (sound) button, and rotate or to scroll through the following choices:





Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press

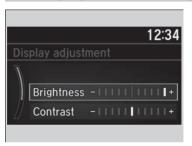
■ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid,** and **High.** SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♂ to select **Settings**, then press ♂.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Display adjustment**, then press ♥.
- **4.** Rotate ♂ to select **Brightness**, then press ૱.
- **5.** Rotate ♂ to adjust the setting, then press ♂.

Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

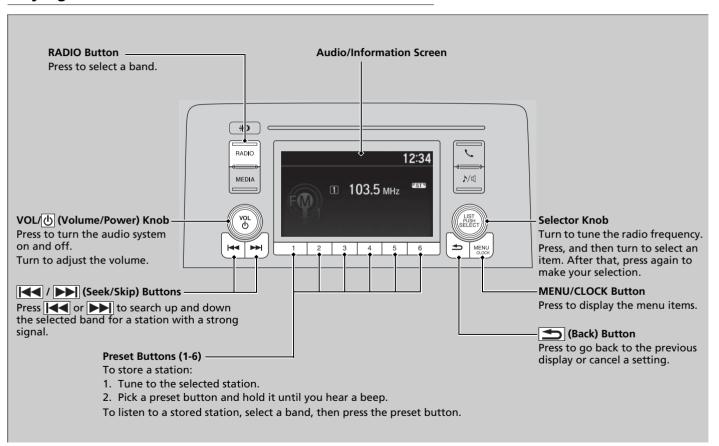


- **1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate ♂ to select **Settings**, then press ♂.
- **3.** Rotate ۞ to select **Colour theme**, then press ᠍.
- **4.** Rotate ⊘ to select the setting you want, then press ⊗.

∑Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio



■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- **1.** Press 🕹 while listening to a radio.
- **2.** Rotate ⑦ to select the station, then press ⊗.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- **1.** Press 🛎 while listening to a radio.
- **2.** Rotate ♂ to select **Update list**, then press ♂.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Scan**, then press ८.

To turn off scan, press ♂.

■ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.

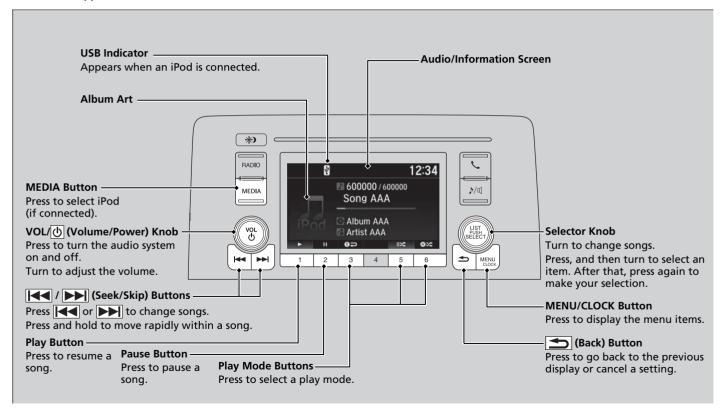
Audio Remote Controls P. 295

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293



■ How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press 🕹 to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate roto select a category.

- **3.** Press ⊗ to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Rotate to select an item, then press .
 - ► Press 🗟 and rotate 🛜 repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 365

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Shuffle all: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Repeat one track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

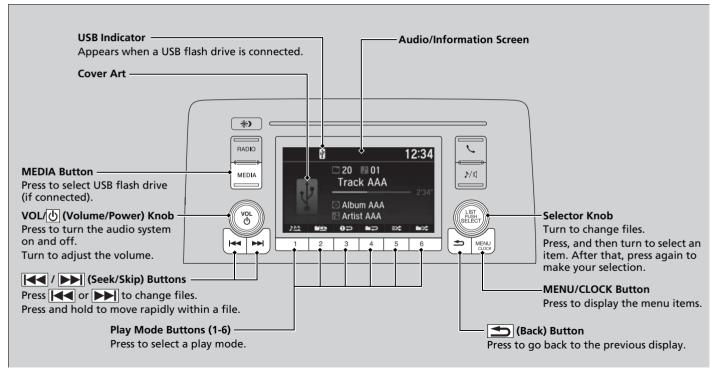
Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press . Rotate to select a mode, then press . To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1 or WAV format.

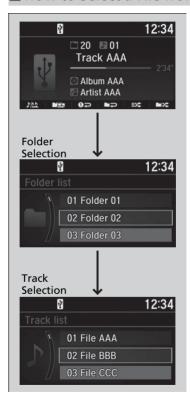
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293



^{*1:}Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press ♂ to display a folder list.

2. Rotate ' to select a folder.

- **3.** Press 🕹 to display a list of files in that folder.
- **4.** Rotate 🗇 to select a file, then press 🕹.

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

☑ General Information on the Audio System P. 367

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 365

Continued 311

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

➤ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat one folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

OP Repeat one track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random all: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press . Rotate to select a mode, then press . To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then

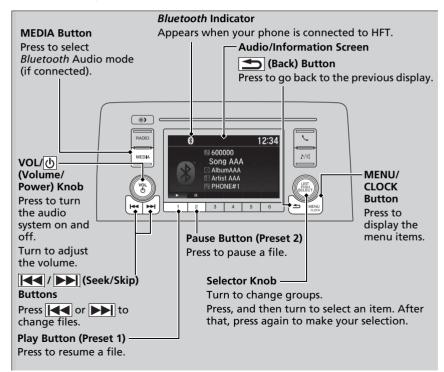
press ♂.

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 412



Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in **Priority device setup**.

Customized Features P. 373

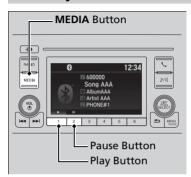
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

Continued 313

■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files



- **1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
- **2.** Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

∑To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

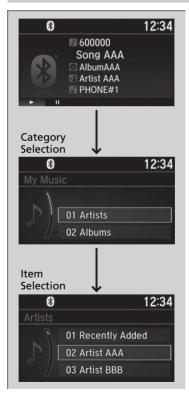
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



1. Press 🕹 to display the music search list.

2. Rotate 😙 to select a category.

- **3.** Press ⊗ to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select an item, then press ८.
 - ▶ Press ॐ and rotate ॐ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

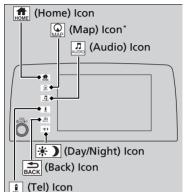
▶ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Audio System Basic Operation

Models with Display Audio

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- (Home): Select to go to the home screen.
- Switching the Display P. 317
- [Map]*: Select to display the map screen.
- Refer to the Navigation System Manual
- (Audio): Select to display the audio screen.

 (Tel): Select to display the phone screen.

 (Back): Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated



(Day/Night): Select to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Select nonce and select or to make an adjustment.

► Each time you select ※), the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio Menu Items

- Station List P. 342
- Music Search List P. 344, 347
- **Scan** P. 342, 348
- **▶ Play Mode** P. 345, 348

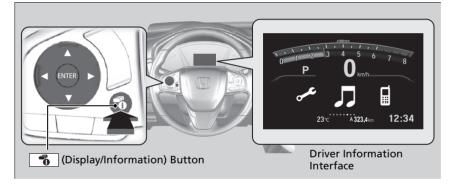
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

■ Using the (display/information) button

Press the (display/information) button to change the display.



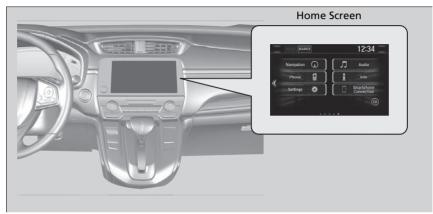
■ Using the (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

Customizing the Meter P. 321

Continued 317

■ Using the audio/information screen



Select to go to the home screen.

Select the following icons on the home screen or after selecting (a) App List.

■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

▶ Hands-Free Telephone System P. 427

Substitution Subs

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures including touching, swiping and scrolling to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 380

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper** and **System/device information**.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.

To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Clock/wallpaper: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

System/device information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

■ Customized Features P. 380

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

■ Apple CarPlay*/Android Auto*

Displays the Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*.

▶ Apple CarPlay* P. 357

Android Auto* P. 361

■ App List ()

Displays the apps or widgets screen.

▶ Home Screen P. 327

■ Instrument Panel

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



- 1. Select 🏦.
- 2. Select and hold an icon.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 4. Select OK.
 - ➤ The screen will return to the home screen.

Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.



- 1. #HOME
- 2. Settings
- 3. System
- 4. Configuration of Instrument Panel

■ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Swap Config.**.

When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select Advisor during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Continued 321

■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:

* Instrument Panel Configuration 1 12:34 Edit Order Add Delete **Edit Order** Edit Order 12:34 Select 12:34 Edit Order は〈口〉目 Arrow icons OK

1. Edit Order

- 2. Select the icon you want to move.
 - ➤ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

- **3.** Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.
- 4. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the **Instrument** Panel screen.

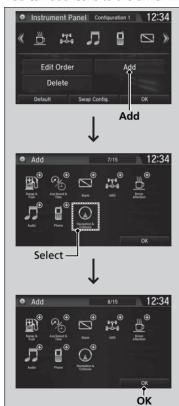
Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

- 1. Edit Order
- 2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
- 3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 4. Select **OK**.
- The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:



1. Add

- 2. Select an icon you want to add.
 - You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the **Instrument** Panel screen.

■ Adding contents

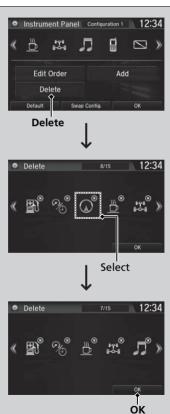
Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

Continued 323

■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Delete

- 2. Select an icon you want to delete.
 - ► The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the **Instrument** Panel screen.

Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

- 1. Delete or Edit Order
- 2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
- 3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
- 4. Select **OK**.
- The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.





- **1.** Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 - **USB Port(s)** P. 293
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Clock.
- **4.** Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
- 5. Select Add New.
 - ► The picture name is displayed on the list.
- **6.** Select a desired picture.
 - ➤ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
- **7.** Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 - ► The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
 Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

- 1. Select home.
- 2. Select «
- 3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 4. Select Change wallpaper.
- 5. Select Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.

■ Select wallpaper

- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select Clock.
- **3.** Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- **4.** Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 5. Select Set.
 - ► The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

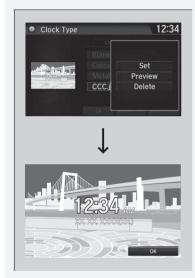
- 1. Select _____.
- 2. Select Info.
- 3. Select MENU.
- 4. Select Clock/wallpaper.

■ Delete wallpaper

- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select Clock.
- **3.** Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- 4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 5. Select **Delete**.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- **6.** Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ► The display will return to the wallpaper list.

≫Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



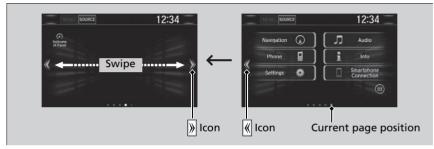
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select $\frac{\mathbf{OK}}{\mathbf{BACK}}$.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**

■ Home Screen

■ To change to a next screen



Selecting (or), or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Select no go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To use apps or widgets



- 1. Select HOME.
- 2. Select App List ().
 - ► The apps screen appears.
- 3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser**: Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- Calculator: Displays Calculator.
- **Gallery**: Displays images.
- Downloads: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer**: Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.
- **Search**: Displays various retrieval screen.

∑To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 405

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 405

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact an authorised Honda dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser start up.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

∑To use apps or widgets

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

- 1. Select HOME.
- 2. Select **Settings**.
- 3. Select **System**.
- 4. Select the **Others** tab.
- 5. Select **Detailed Information**.
- 6. Select **Apps**.
- 7. Select an app that you want to delete.
- 8. Select **Delete**.

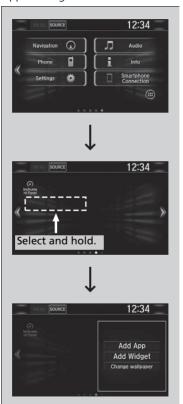
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.







- **3.** Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
 - ► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

- 4. Select Add App or Add Widget.
 - ► The apps/widget screen appears.

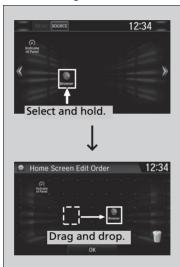


- **5.** Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.

- **6.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 7. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



- 1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.

- **2.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

∑To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** (((m))), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



- 1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.

- **2.** Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
 - ► The icon is removed from the home screen.
- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

∑To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation*, Smartphone Connection, App List (), and Instrument Panel icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

■ Status Area



- **1.** Swipe the upper area of the screen.
 - ► The status area appears.

- 2. Select an item to see the details.
- 3. Select or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area

■ Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.



- 1. Select .
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- **4.** Select the **Others** tab.
- **5.** Select **Change Skin**.
- 6. Select Yes.

○ Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

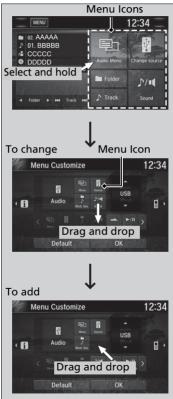
- 1. Select from .
- 2. Select «.
- 3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
- 5. Select Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

Customized Features P. 380

■ Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



- **1.** Select any of the three icons (**Audio**/ **Phone/Info**) on the screen, then select and hold the menu icon.
 - ➤ Selecting the or icon, you can change Audio, Phone, or Info on the Menu Customize screen.

Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

- **3.** Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.
- 4. Select OK.

Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change the menu icon:

Select Settings→System→Home tab→Menu Icon
Position

Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



- 2. Select the **Active** tab.
 - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
- **3.** Select an app you want to close.
- 4. Select Clear.
 - ► The display will return to the app list.

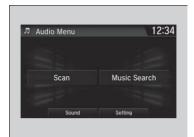
○ Closing Apps ○ Cl

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and relaunch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the Garmin* apps.

Adjusting the Sound



- 1. Select
- 2. Select MENU.
- 3. Select Sound.



Select a tab from the following choices:

- BAS-MID-TRE: Bass, Middle, Treble
- FAD-BAL: Fader, Balance
- **SVC:** Speed Volume Compensation

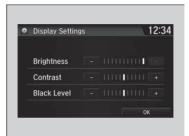
■ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid,** and **High.** SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



- 1. Select .
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- **4.** Select the **Display** tab.
- **5.** Select **Display Settings**.
- **6.** Select the setting you want.
- 7. Select OK.

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

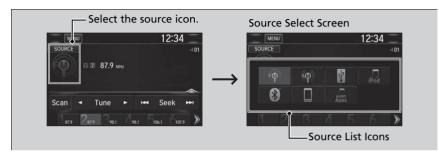


- 1. Select .
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- **4.** Select the **Display** tab.
- **5.** Select **Background Colour**.
- **6.** Select the setting you want.
- 7. Select OK.

○ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

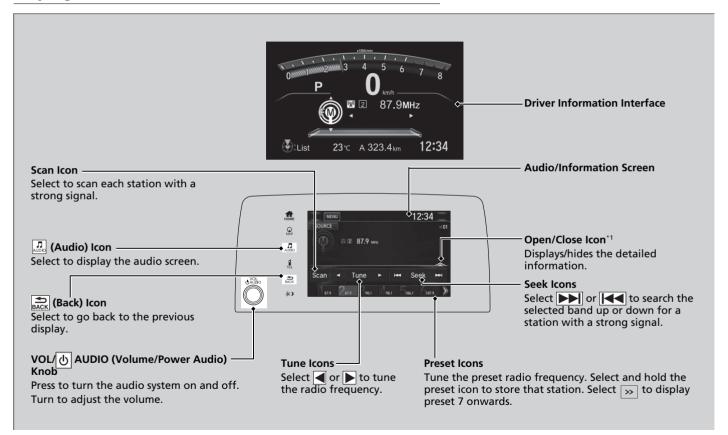
Selecting an Audio Source

If you start up preinstalled audio apps, Apps is displayed on the screen.

These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.

You can start up those audio apps from Apps.

Playing AM/FM Radio



^{*1:}Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

- 1. Tune to the selected station.
- **2.** Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

- 1. Tune to the selected station.
- 2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 3. Select the **Preset** tab.
- **4.** Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- 1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the Station List tab.
- **3.** Select the station

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- 1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the **Station List** tab.
- 3. Select Refresh.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or sacretage.

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the or button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen

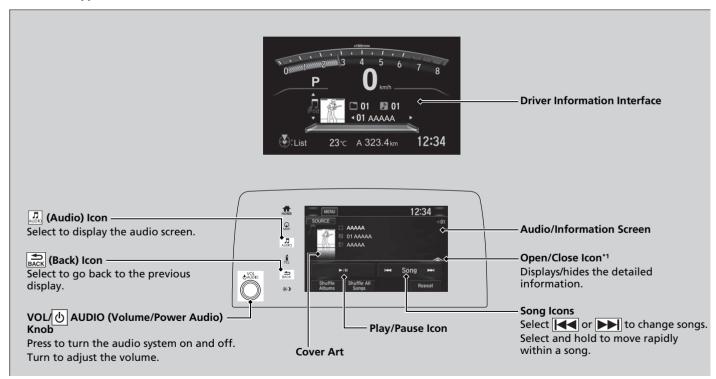
Audio Remote Controls P. 295

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293



^{*1:}Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

■ iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 365

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.

Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay*, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay*.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

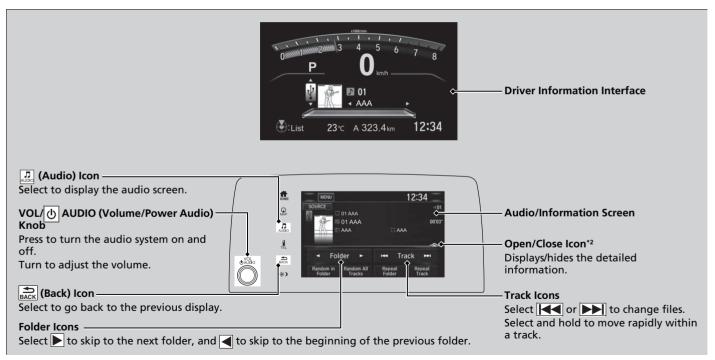
Repeat: Repeats the current track.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1, or MP4 format.

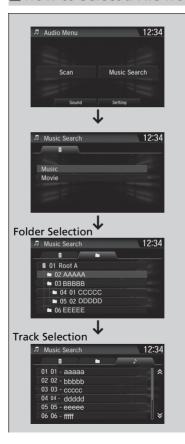
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293



- *1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
- *2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select MENU and select Music Search.

2. Select Music or Movie.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

∑Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

■ General Information on the Audio System P. 367

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 365

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



■ Scan

- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select Scan.
- **3.** Select a play mode.



■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select or **Cancel**.

To turn off Random or Repeat, select the mode you want to turn off.

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current

folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order. **Repeat Folder**: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file:

Play/Pause: Plays or pauses the file.

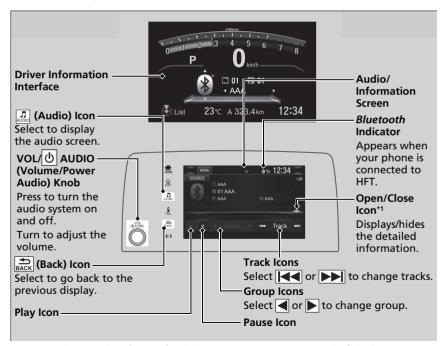
Stop: Stops the file.

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 435



*1:Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

≥Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in **Priority Device Settings**.

Customized Features P. 380

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting

Connect from the Bluetooth Device List screen.

Phone Setup P. 435

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

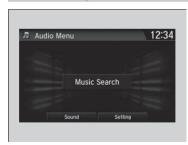


- **1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
 - Phone Setup P. 435
- 2. Select the Bluetooth® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music



- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select Music Search.
- **3.** Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
- 4. Select an item.
 - ► The selection begins playing.

∑To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select **Setting**.

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/ information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable, or wirelessly.

- Connecting Your Smartphone P. 353
- **₩i-Fi mode (setting for the first time)** P. 354

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

Phone Setup P. 435

Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

► To change the currently paired phone P. 436

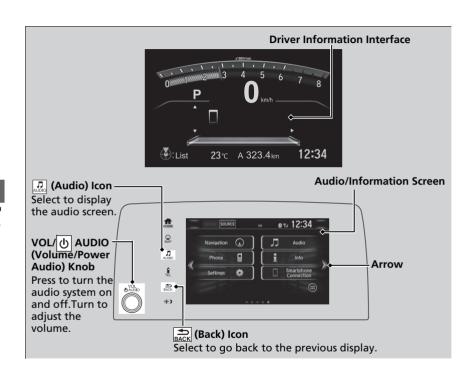
The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

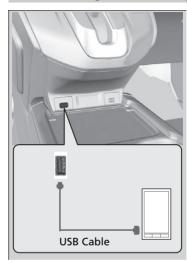
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.



■ Connecting Your Smartphone



- **1.** Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
 - Phone Setup P. 435
- **2.** Plug in your phone to the USB port.
 - You may need to operate from the phone.
 - ► Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
- **3.** Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
- **4.** Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - To go back to the previous screen, select

○ Connecting Your Smartphone

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

■ Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



- 1. Select .
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Bluetooth / Wi-Fi.
- **4.** Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
- Select Wi-Fi On/Off Status, then select On.
- 6. Select Yes.
- 7. Select Wi-Fi Device List.
 - ► Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
 - ► If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the connection on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.



- 8. Select Add.
 - ► If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **Done**.
 - ➤ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
- **9.** Select to go back to the home screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

■Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

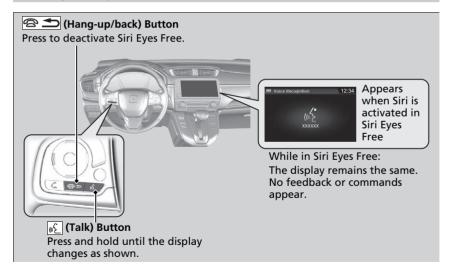
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the [6] (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 435

Using Siri Eyes Free



Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

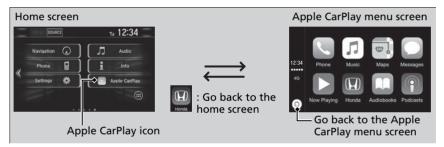
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay*

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Port(s) P. 293

■ Apple CarPlay Menu



■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

■ Apple CarPlay *

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located on the back of the centre console compartment will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay P. 359

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 435

■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt

shows again next time.)

Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt

does not show again.)

Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the 🖟 (Talk) button to activate Siri.



≥Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto*

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

■ USB Port(s) P. 293

▶ Auto Pairing Connection P. 363

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

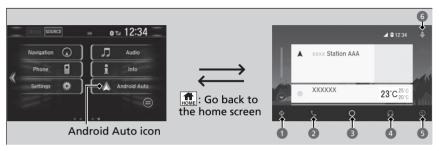
To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port on the back of the centre console compartment will not enable Android Auto operation.

USB Port(s) P. 293

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 435

Android Auto Menu



1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

National Auto * Android Auto *

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

4 Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

- **6** Go back to the Home Screen.
- **6** Voice

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt

shows again next time.)

Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt

does not show again.)

Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under

the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

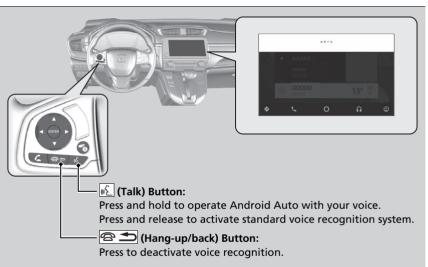
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→
Android Auto

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the 🖟 (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



≥ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the $\boxed{\Psi}$ icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

Audio Error Messages

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB error*1,*2	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.*2	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported ver*1 Unsupported Version*2	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect retry*1, *2	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File*1, *2	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No song*1 No Data*2	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV*, or MP4* files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

^{*1:}Models with colour audio system

* Not available on all models Continued 365

^{*2:}Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
Unsupported*1, *2	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Device no response*1	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
HUB Unsupported*1	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

^{*1:}Models with colour audio system

Models with Display Audio

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

3 ,	5 ,
Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?	App is not responding. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform Factory Data Reset . Defaulting All the Settings P. 405

^{*1:****}part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

^{*2:}Models with Display Audio

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with colour audio system

Model

iPod (5th generation)

iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)

iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)

iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)

iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012

iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012

iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus

Models with Display Audio

Model

iPod touch (6th generation) released 2015

iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone 7/ iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/ iPhone XR

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV*, or MP4* formats may be unsupported.

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

™USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

■ Recommended Devices*					
Media	USB Fla	sh Drive			
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)				
File extension (MP4 version)	on (MP4 version) .mp4/.m4v				
Compatible audio codec	AAC	MP3			
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)			
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)			
Maximum image	720 x 5	76 pixels			

Models with Display Audio

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay*/Android Auto*

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE IOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY. THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS. AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED. STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS. AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO. INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

* Not available on all models

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED. REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES. OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS: HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA. WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE. SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR. MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source Licence information, follow these steps.

Models with colour audio system

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate ♂ to select **Settings**, then press ♂.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **License**, then press ८.

Models with Display Audio

- 1. Select 👬
- 2. Select Settings.
- **3.** Select **System**.
- **4.** Select the **Others** tab.
- 5. Select **Detailed Information**.
- 6. Select About device.
- **7.** Select **Legal information**.
- 8. Select Open-source licences.

∑About Open Source Licences

Models with colour audio system

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Licence Information

DOLBY DIGITAL

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



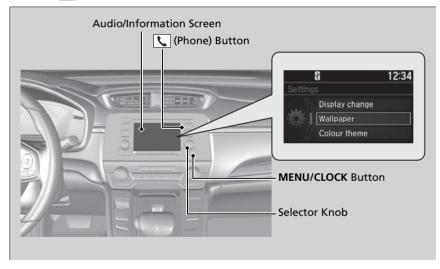
Customized Features

Models with colour audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode must be ON, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the then button, then select **Phone setup**.



○ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

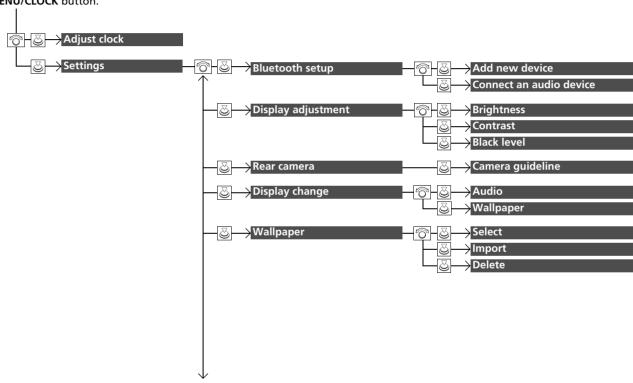
Rotate 😙 to select.

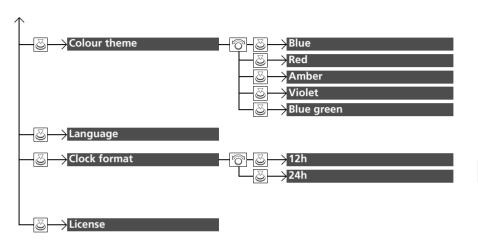
Press 🕹 to enter.

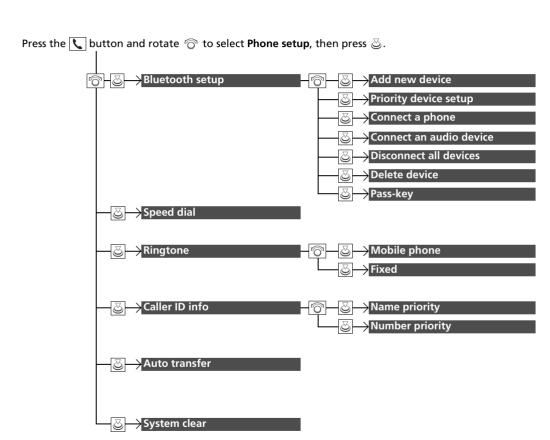
Continued 373

■ Customization Flow

Press the MENU/CLOCK button.







■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Custo	omizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust clock			Adjust Clock. Discrete P. 166	_
	Bluetooth setup	Add new device	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. Phone Setup P. 412	_
		Connect an audio device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	_
Settings	Display adjustment	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	_
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	_
		Black level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	_
	Rear camera	Camera guideline	Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.	On*1/Off

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	(listomizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
	Display cha	nge	Changes the display type.	Audio*1/Wallpaper	
	Wallpaper	Select	Changes the wallpaper type.	Clock*1/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3	
		Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. ☑ Wallpaper Setup P. 301		
C - 44!		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Image 1/Image 2/Image 3	
Settings	Colour theme		Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue*1/Red/Amber/Violet/ Blue green	
	Language		Changes the display language.	Chinese*1/UK English/ Portuguese	
	Clock forma	t	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12h*1/24h	
	License		Shows the legal information.		

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	CUSTOMIZADIE FEATURES		eatures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Add new	device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ▶ Phone Setup P. 412	_
		Priority device setup th	Priority	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device which has been assigned priority.	On*1/Off
			Phone priority	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	_
	Bluetooth setup		Audio priority	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	_
		Connect a phone		Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ▶ Phone Setup P. 412	_
Phone		Connect an audio device		Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	_
setup		Disconnect all devices		Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	_
		Delete dev	rice	Deletes a paired phone.	_
		Pass-key		Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	_
	Speed dial			Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. Speed Dial P. 421	_
	Ringtone			Selects the ring tone.	Mobile phone*1/Fixed
	Caller ID info			Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	Name priority*1/ Number priority
	Auto transfer			Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.	On*1/Off
	System clear			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone setup group as default.	_

^{*1:}Default Setting

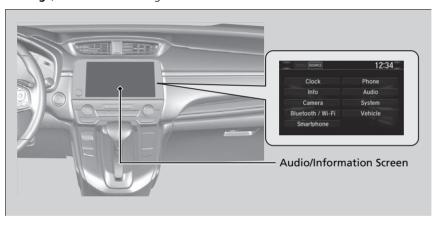
Customized Features

Models with Display Audio

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select , and **Settings**, then select a setting item.

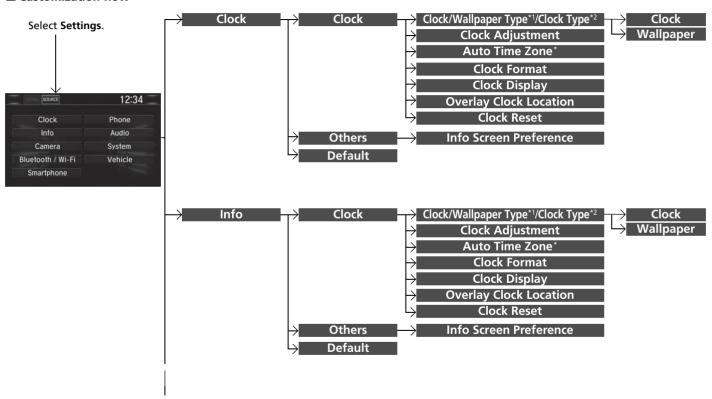


Customized Features

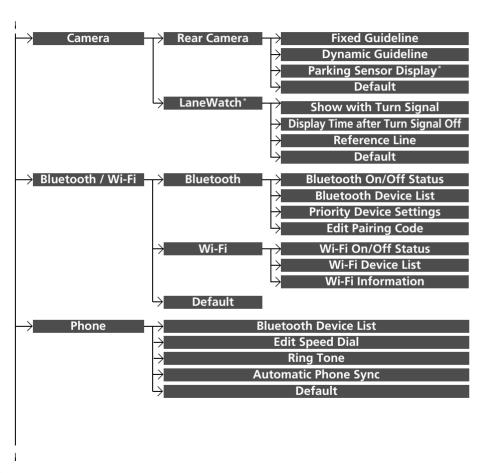
When you customize settings:

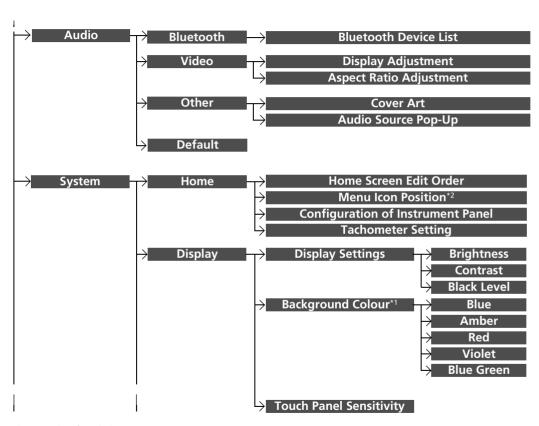
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

■ Customization flow

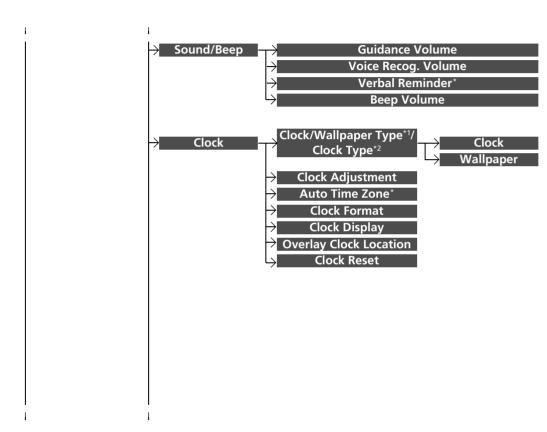


- *1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
- *2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

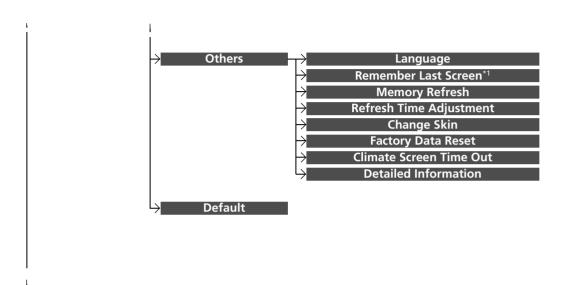




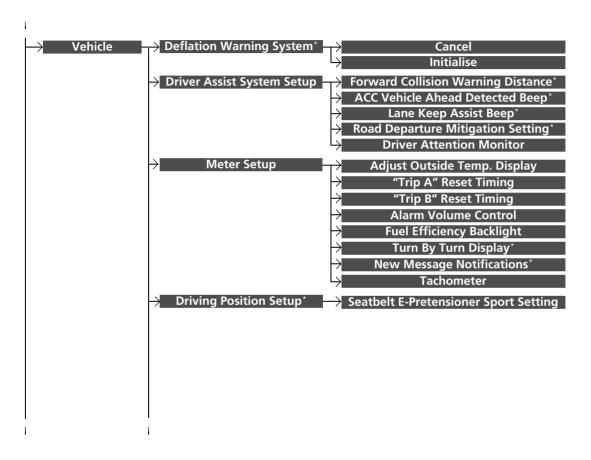
- *1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
- *2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

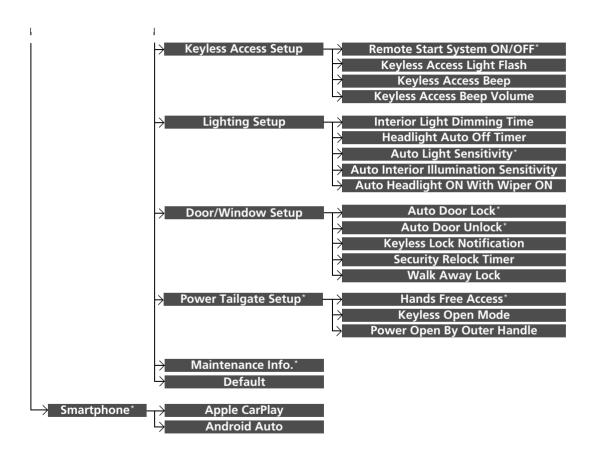


^{*1:} Does not appear when you change the screen interface design. *2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.



^{*1:} Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.





■ List of customizable options

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2 Clock Adjustment Auto Time Zone* Clock Format	Type*1/Clock Type*2 Wallpaper		
		See Info on P. 389		
Clock		Clock Display		
		Overlay Clock Location		
		Clock Reset		
	Others	Info Screen Preference		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Clock settings group as default.	Yes/No

^{*1:}Does not appear when you change the screen interface design. *2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group		Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info		Clock/ Wallpaper	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital*1/ Small Digital/Off
	Clock	Type* ² / Clock Type* ³	Wallpaper	 Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. 	Blank/Galaxy* ¹ / Metallic
0	CIOCK	Clock Adjus	tment	Adjusts Clock.	_
		Auto Time	Zone*	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	On*1/Off
		Clock Forma	at	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H*1/24H

^{*1:}Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Clock Display		Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On*1/Off
Info	Clock	Overlay Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Right Upper*1/Left Upper/Right Lower/ Left Lower/Off
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	Yes/No
	Others	Info Screen Preference	Selects the top menu when the (display/information) button is pressed. Info Top- A brief menu pops up. Info Menu- A full menu pops up. Off- A menu does not pop up.	Info Top/Info Menu*¹/Off
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info settings group as default.	Yes/No

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
	Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 545	On*1/Off	
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 545	On*1/Off	
		Di	Parking Sensor Display*	Changes the view of the rear camera display.	Normal View/Split View*1
Camera				Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera setting group as default.
	LaneWatch*		Show with Turn Signal	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	On*1/Off
			Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	0 seconds*1/2 seconds
		Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On*1/Off	
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the LaneWatch group as default.	Yes/No	

^{*1:}Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		atures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Bluetooth On/Off Status Bluetooth Device List		Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On*1/Off
	Bluetooth			Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. Phone Setup P. 435	
		Bluetooth Priority On/Off Status Device Settings Audio Phone Edit Pairing Code	On/Off	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a <i>Bluetooth®</i> device which has been assigned priority.	On*1/Off
			Audio	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	_
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi			Phone	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	_
			Edits a pairing code. To change the pairing code setting P. 436	Random/ Fixed*1	
		Wi-Fi On/C	Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On/Off*1
	Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi Device List		Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	_
		Wi-Fi Infor	mation	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	_
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth / Wi-Fi group as default.	Yes/No

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 435	_	
	Edit Speed Dial Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. Speed Dial P. 440		_	
Phone	Ring Tone Selects the ring tone.		Fixed/Mobile Phone*1	
	Automatic Phone Sync Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.		On*1/Off	
	Default Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone settings grou as default.		Yes/No	

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features Description					Selectable Settings
Audio	Bluetooth® mode Bluetooth	Bluetooth Device List			Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 435	_
	USB mode Video	Display Adjustment	Display	Brightness		
				Contrast	See System on P. 396	
				Black Level	_	
			Colour	Colour	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.	_
				Tint	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	_
		Aspect Ratio Adjustment			Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio from Original (only USB), Normal , Full and Zoom .	Original*1 (only USB)/Normal/ Full*1/Zoom

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	Other	iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] Cover Art	Turns the cover art display on and off.	On*1/Off
	Other	Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On/Off*1
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio settings group as default.	Yes/No

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		eatures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Menu Icon Position*2 Configuration of Instrument Panel		Changes the home screen icon layout.	_
	Home			Changes the position of the menu icons on the Audio , Phone , and Info screen.	_
	Home			Changes the Instrument Panel screen icon layout.	_
		Tachomete	Tachometer Setting Turns on and off the tachometer display.		On*1/Off
System	Display		Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	_
		Settings	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	_
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	_
		Backgroun	d Colour*3	Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue/Amber/Red/ Violet/Blue Green*1
		Touch Pane	el Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Low*1

^{*1:}Default Setting
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group		Customizable Features	3	Description	Selectable Settings
		Guidance Volume		Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	1~6*1~11
	Sound/ Beep	Voice Recog. Volume		Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	1~6*1~11
		Verbal Reminder*		Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	On*1/Off
		Beep Volume		Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2*1/3
		Clock/Wallpaper Type*2/ Clock Type*3	Clock		
System			Wallpaper		
	Clock	Clock Adjustment Auto Time Zone* Clock Format			
				Coolufe on D. 200	
				— See Info on P. 389 — — —	
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			

^{*1:}Default Setting

^{*2:}Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings					
		Language	Change the display language.	English (United Kingdom)*1: See other selectable languages on the screen.					
		Remember Last Screen*2	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off*1					
		Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).	On*¹/Off					
	Others	Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for Memory Refresh .	_					
System		Change Skin	Changes the screen interface design.	Yes/No					
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. Defaulting All the Settings P. 405	Yes/No					
							Climate Screen Time Out	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the CLIMATE button.	Never/5 Seconds/ 10 Seconds*1/20 Seconds
		Detailed Information	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	_					
	Default		Cancels /Resets all customized items in the System group as default.	Yes/No					

^{*1:}Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Deflation Warning System*		Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel*1/Initialise	
		Forward Collision Warning Distance*	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance.	Far/Normal*1/Near On/Off*1	
	Driver Assist System Setup Ro M D	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.		
		System Lane Keep Assist	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	On/Off*1	
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting*	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Early/Normal*1/Delayed/ Warning Only	
		Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	Tactile And Audible Alert*1/Tactile Alert/Off	

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C	
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*1	
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*1	
		Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid* ¹ /Min	
Vehicle	Meter Setup	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On*1/Off	
		Turn By Turn Display*	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance in the meter.	On*1/Off	
		New Message Notifications*	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/ e-mail message.	On*1/Off	
		Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	On*1/Off	

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Driving Seatbelt E-Pretensioner Position Setup* Sport Setting		Turns the auto seatbelt tension setting for the seat belt e-pretensioner on and off.	On*1/Off
	CON/OFF* Keyless Access Li Flash Keyless Access Be	Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	On*1/Off
Vehicle		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	On*1/Off
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	On*1/Off
		Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the keyless access beep volume.	High*1/Low

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec*1/ 15sec
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/ 15sec*1/0sec
Vehicle	Lighting Setup	Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	Max/High/Mid* ¹ / Low/Min
	Auto I Illumii — Auto I	Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	Min/Low/Mid* ¹ / High/Max
		Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	On*1/Off

^{*1:}Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Auto Door Lock*	Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	With Vehicle Speed*1/ Shift From P/Off	
		Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	Shift to P*1/IGN Off/Off	
	Door/ Window	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	On*1/Off	
	Setup	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec*1	
Vehicle		Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	On/Off*1	
		Hands Free Access	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	On*1/Off	
	Tailgate Setup*	Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	Anytime*1/ When Unlocked	
		Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	Off (Manual only)/ On (Power/Manual)*1	
	Maintenance Info.*		Used to reset the engine oil life display when the maintenance service has been performed.	_	

^{*1:}Default Setting

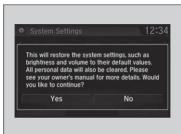
* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default.	Yes/No
C*	Apple CarPlay	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	_
Smartphone*	Android Auto	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	_

Models with Display Audio

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



- 1. Select .
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- **4.** Select the **Others** tab.
- 5. Select Factory Data Reset.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- **6.** Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
- 7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
 - After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

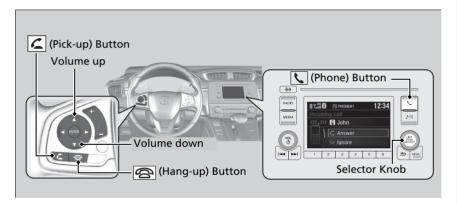
Hands-Free Telephone System

Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

■ HFT Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen.

Selector knob: Rotate ♥ to select an item on the screen, then press ८.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

Speed Dial P. 421

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

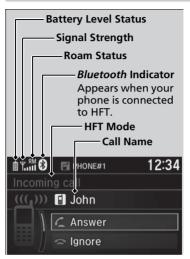
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

■ HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

► MFT Status Display

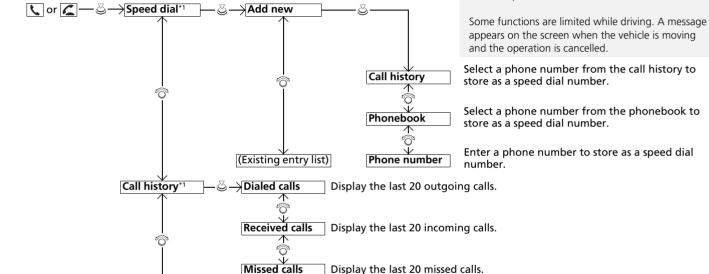
The information that appears on the audio/ information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.



Display the paired phone's phonebook.

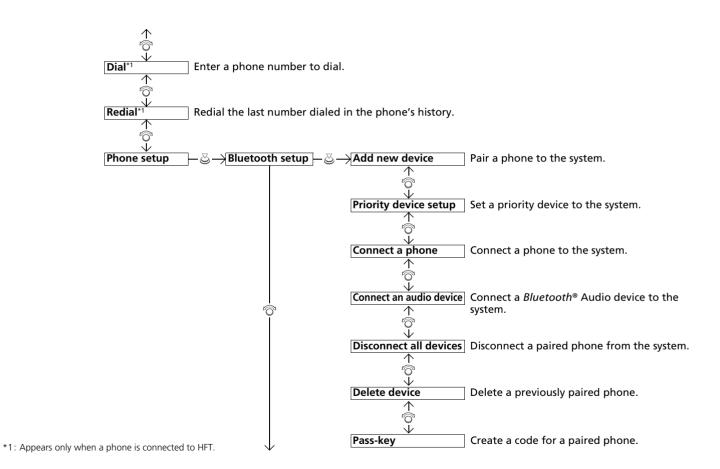
>> HFT Menus

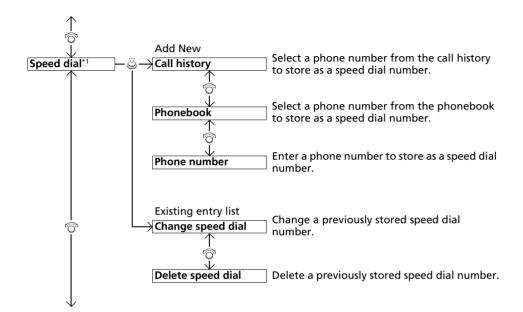
vehicle is parked.

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the

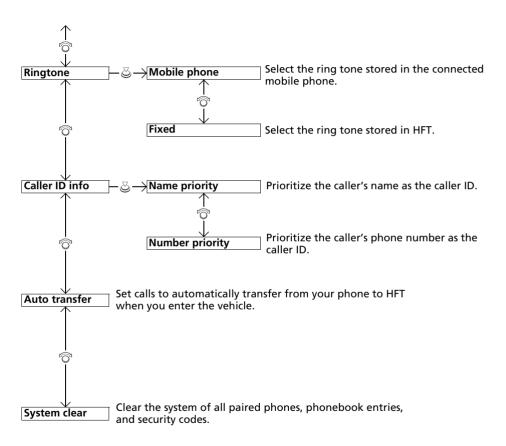
Phonebook*1

^{*1:} Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.

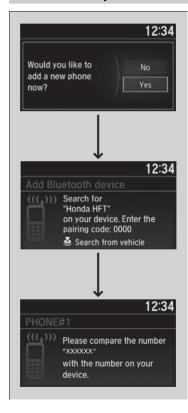




^{*1:} Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



■ Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- **2.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- **3.** Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
 - ► The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.
- **4.** Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, press 🛎 and follow the prompts.

When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing \mathfrak{L} .

- **5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
 This may vary by phone.
- **6.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready to be paired or is not paired within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.

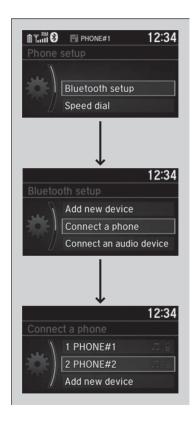
■: The phone is compatible with Bluetooth® Audio.

When pairing a phone from this audio system: If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.



- To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)
- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate 🗑 to select Yes, then press 🕹 .
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Add new device**, then press ८.
- **4.** Press ♂ to select **OK**.
 - ► The screen changes to device list.
- **5.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press ⅀.
 - ► HFT automatically searches for a Bluetooth® device.
- **6.** When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⊗.
 - ▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
- **7.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ➤ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.

 This may vary by a phone.

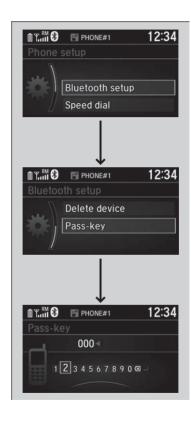


■ To change the currently paired phone

- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Phone setup**, then press ♥.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press ♥.

- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select **Connect a phone**, then press ♥.
 - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.

- **5.** Rotate ♥ to select a desired device name, then press ८.
 - ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

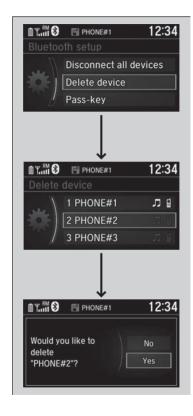


■ To change the pairing code setting

- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate ⊘ to select **Phone setup**, then press ⊗.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press ♥.

4. Rotate ♂ to select **Pass-key**, then press ⑤.

5. Input a new pairing code, then press 🕹 .



■ To delete a paired phone

- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate ♂ to select **Phone setup**, then press ♂.
- **3.** Rotate ♂ to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press ⊘.

- **4.** Rotate [♠] to select **Delete device**, then press [♠].
 - ► The screen changes to a device list.
- **5.** Rotate ۞ to select a phone you want to delete, then press ॆ⊗.

6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate 🎅 to select **Yes**, then press 💍.

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- 2. Rotate ♥ to select **Phone setup**, then press ♥.
- **3.** Rotate 😚 to select **Ringtone**, then press 💍.
- **4.** Rotate ^{*}⊕ to select **Mobile phone** or **Fixed**, then press ^{*}⊜.

■ Caller ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- **2.** Rotate '⊚' to select **Phone setup**, then press ⊗.
- **3.** Rotate '⑦' to select **Caller ID info**, then press ⑤.
- **4.** Rotate '♥ to select a mode you want, then press ೬.

Ring Tone

Mobile phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Caller ID Information

Name priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

Number priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

■ Automatic Transferring

If pairing between your phone and the system is executed while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.



- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- **2.** Rotate ⊘ to select **Phone setup**, then press ⊘.
- 3. Rotate ro select Auto transfer.
- **4.** Press 💍 to select **On** or **Off**.

■ To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



- 1. Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate ♂ to select **Phone** setup, then press ♂.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **System clear**, then press ♥.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select **Yes**, then press ८.

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate '⑤' to select **Yes**, then press ⑤.

6. A notification appears on the screen. Press 💍 .

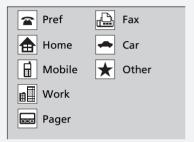
■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



Matter Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- 2. Rotate rotate rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press so.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select **Add new**, then press ७.
- **4.** Rotate 🎅 to select a place to choose a number from, then press 💆.

From **Call history**:

► Select a number from the call history.

From **Phonebook**:

Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

From **Phone number**:

Input the number manually.

Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.



■ To edit a speed dial

- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- 2. Rotate ♂ to select **Phone setup**, then press ♂.
- 3. Rotate 😙 to select **Speed dial**, then press 💍.
- **4.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
- **5.** Rotate ۞ to select **Change speed dial**, then press ॆ⊗.
- **6.** Select a new speed dial number, then press 💍 .



- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- **2.** Rotate ♥ to select **Phone setup**, then press ♥.
- **3.** Rotate ♂ to select **Speed dial**, then press <a>⊗.
- **4.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
- **5.** Rotate ♥ to select **Delete speed dial**, then press ♥.
 - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate 🎓 to select **Yes**, then press 🕹.



■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.





■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT

- 1. Press the button or the button.
- **2.** Rotate 🌣 to select **Phonebook**, then press 🍣.
- 3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate 😙 to select the initial, then press 🛎.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select a name, then press ८.
- - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.







■ To make a call using a phone number

- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- 2. Rotate ♥ to select **Dial**, then press ८.
- 3. Rotate ♂ to select a number, then press ⑤.

■ To make a call using redial

- **1.** Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate ♂ to select **Redial**, then press ⊗.

 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history Call history is stored by Dialed calls, Received calls, and Missed calls.

- **1.** Press the **\(\)** button or the **\(\)** button.
- 3. Rotate 😙 to select **Dialed calls**, **Received** calls, or **Missed calls**, then press 💆.
- **4.** Rotate ♥ to select a number, then press ७.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

∑To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

∑To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

- 1. Press the button or the button.
- 2. Rotate ro select **Speed dial**, then press s.
- **3.** Rotate ♥ to select a number, then press ♥.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

∑To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.

Press the button to decline or end the call.

■ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the **__** button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the **L** button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the audio/information. Rotate to select the icon, then press 8.

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Swap call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer call: Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.

Dial tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven

phone system.



- **1.** To view the available options, press the button.
- - ➤ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Dial tones: Available on some phones.

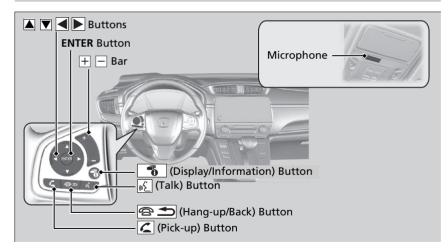
Hands-Free Telephone System

Models with Display Audio

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

■ HFT Buttons



Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*, HFT is unavailable.

How to customize P. 380

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's VOL (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to three speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.

Speed Dial P. 440

Up to three previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

buttons: Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

(Display/information) button: Select and press ENTER to display Speed Dial, Call History, or Phonebook on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

- **1.** Select to switch the display to the phone screen.
- 2. Select MENU.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

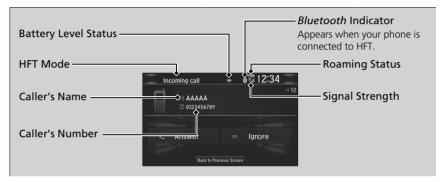
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

Speed Dial P. 440

► MFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/ information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

■ Phone Settings screen

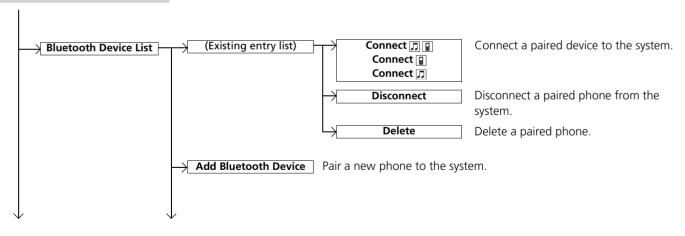


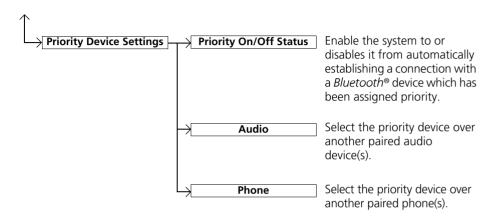
- 1. Select ____.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Phone.

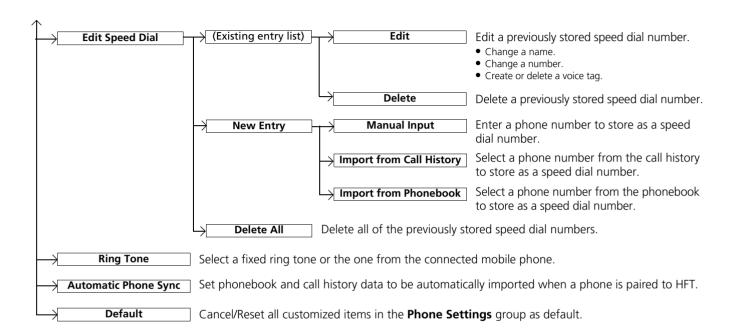
>> HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.



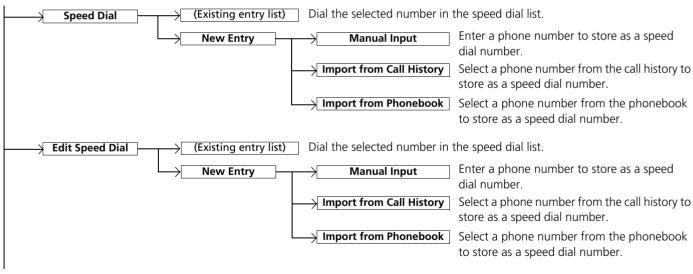


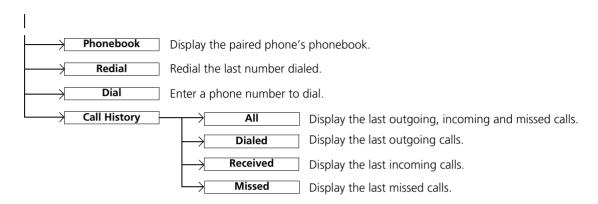


■ Phone Menu screen



- 1. Select 📜.
- 2. Select MENU.





■ Phone Setup



- To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)
- 1. Select 📳
- 2. Select Yes.
- **3.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- **4.** Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select Honda HFT Not Found, Continue, and then select your phone when it appears on the list. If your phone does not appear, you can select Refresh to search again.
- **5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
- **6.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
 - ➤ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** and then a device you want to prioritize.

∑Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive handsfree calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready to be paired or is not paired within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- The phone can be used with HFT.
- **[J]**: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay*, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.





■ To change the currently paired phone

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
 - **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 430
- 2. Select Bluetooth Device List.
- 3. Select a phone to connect.
 - ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
- **4.** Select **Connect □**, **Connect □**, or **Connect □**.

■ To change the pairing code setting

- 1. Select 1.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Bluetooth / Wi-Fi.
- **4.** Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
- **5.** Select **Edit Pairing Code**.

6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

∑To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To change the *Bluetooth*® connection priority device setting, select **Priority Device Settings** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

∑To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



■ To delete a paired phone

- **1.** Go to the phone settings screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 430
- 2. Select Bluetooth Device List.
- **3.** Select a phone you want to delete.

- 4. Select **Delete**.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 430
- 2. Select Ring Tone.
- 3. Select Fixed or Mobile Phone.

Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers. **Mobile Phone**: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

439

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



Phone Settings

Edit Speed Dial

Ring Tone

Default

Bluetooth Device List

Automatic Phone Sync

Automatic Phone Sync

Automatic Phone
Synchronization

On: Phonebook and call history will be imported.

Off: Phonebook and call history will not be

12:34

12:34

Mobile Phone

On

■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

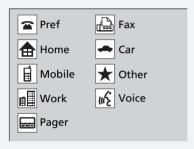


- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 430
- 2. Select Automatic Phone Sync.

3. Select On or Off.

Matter Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

■ Speed Dial 9Ta 12:34 <New Entry> 12:34 Mew Entry Import from Manual Input Import from Call 12:34 Store Voice Tag To store a voice tag. select Record or push of wait for the count down. and say the voice tag you would like to store. Record

To store a speed dial number:

- 1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

 Phone Menu screen P. 433
- 2. Select Speed Dial.
- 3. Select New Entry.
 From Import from Call History:
 - ➤ Select a number from the call history.

From Manual Input:

Input the number manually.

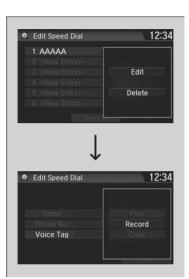
From Import from Phonebook:

- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
- **4.** When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.

5. Select **Record**, or use the <u>©</u> button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

≫Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the $\stackrel{\frown}{\bowtie}$ button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen.

 ▶ Phone Settings screen P. 430
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- **4.** Select **Voice Tag**.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
- **5.** Select **Record**, or use the <u>№</u> button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

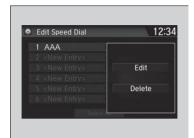
Speed Dial Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags. Avoid using "home" as a voice tag. It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



■ To delete a voice tag

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 430
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- **4.** Select **Voice Tag**.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.



■ To edit a speed dial

- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen.

 ▶ Phone Settings screen P. 430
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- **4.** Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen.

 ▶ Phone Settings screen P. 430
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
- **4.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the 🛍 button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay*, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay*.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

- 1. Select 📳
- 2. Select Phonebook.
- 3. Select a name.
 - You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
 - ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
- 4. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≥ To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can also select **Phonebook** on the **Phone Menu** screen.

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

Speed Dial P. 440







■ To make a call using a phone number

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 - Phone Menu screen P. 433
- 2. Select Dial.
- 3. Select a number.
 - ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
- 4. Select 🚄
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.
- To make a call using redial
- 1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

 Phone Menu screen P 433
- 2. Select Redial
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the Call History Call history is stored by All, Dialed, Received, and Missed.

- 1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 433
- 2. Select Call History.
- 3. Select All, Dialed, Received, or Missed.
- **4.** Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

∑To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

Speed Dial P. 440

∑To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls. (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)



■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 - **Phone Menu screen** P. 433
- 2. Select Speed Dial.
- 3. Select a number.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

∑To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the 🛍 button to call the number using the voice tag.

Speed Dial P. 440

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.

Press the 🔊 button and follow the prompts.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.

Press the button to decline or end the call.

■ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the <u>C</u> button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the **L** button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and and buttons.

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-

driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

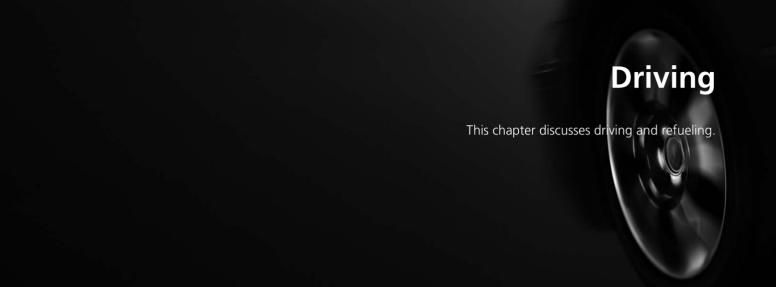
Select the option.

➤ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

≥Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.



Before Driving	448
Towing a Trailer	452
Off-road Guidelines	453
When Driving	
Starting the Engine	455
Precautions While Driving	
Continuously Variable Transmission	462
Shifting	463
ECON Button	469
Cruise Control*	470
Front Sensor Camera*	477
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Speed Follow (LSF)*	

Road Departure Mitigation System* 493 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* 498 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 506 Agile Handling Assist 508 LaneWatch* 509 Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* 511 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* 512 Adjusting Headlight Distribution 516
Brake System 517

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	523
Brake Assist System	524
Emergency Stop Signal	525
Collision Mitigation Braking System	
(CMBS)*	526
Parking Your Vehicle	
When Stopped	536
Parking Sensor System*	537
Multi-View Rear Camera*	545
Refueling	547
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	550
Turbo Engine Vehicle*	551

Before Driving

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ► Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ► Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.

≥ Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 594

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

■ Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - ➤ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - Load Limit P. 451
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - ► They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat*.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - Adjusting the Seats P. 232
 - Adjusting the Front Head Restraints P. 240
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 229
 - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 228

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

B Headlight Adjuster* P. 216

Models with automatic headlight adjuster

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - Fastening a Seat Belt P. 52
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - Indicators P. 102

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 660

Load Limit

AWARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Off-road Guidelines

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
 Load Limit P. 451
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

○ Off-road Guidelines
 ○

AWARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

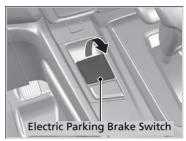
Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

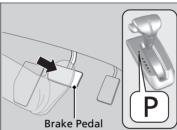
- **▶** Important Handling Information P. 42
- Precautions While Driving P. 460

Avoiding Trouble

- Check Out Your Vehicle before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- Remember the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- Accelerating and Braking should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start
 or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- Avoiding Obstacles and Debris in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- Crossing a Stream Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- If You Get Stuck, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Starting the Engine





- 1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - ➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

- **2.** Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in [N], it is safer to start it in [P].

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system*/climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System P. 195



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

■ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 636

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

■ Stopping the Engine

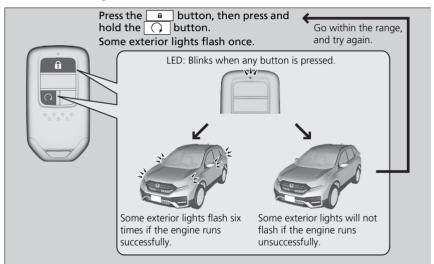
You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

- **1.** Put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$.
- 2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine



When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the \(\cap\) button.

Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

■ Remote Engine Start*

AWARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

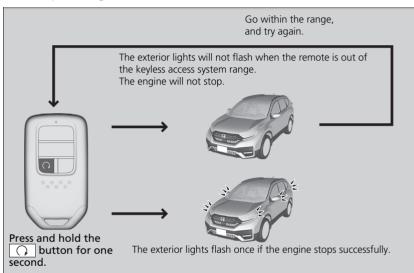
The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The transmission is in a position other than **P**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.

■ To stop the engine



■ Remote Engine Start*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is an antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- Any door is open.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle. When it is warm outside:

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the keyless remote

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

- **2.** Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in \boxed{D} . Select \boxed{R} when reversing.
- **3.** With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ► Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off. ▶ Parking Brake P. 517

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Change the gear position to \boxed{D} , \boxed{S} , or \boxed{L}^* when facing uphill, or \boxed{R} when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

• The climate control system is activated in auto mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated.
- The rear demister is activated.
- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the _____ button* on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Precautions While Driving

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautions when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

▶ Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- **Important Handling Information** P. 42
- **▶ Precautions While Driving** P. 460

Continuously Variable Transmission

Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

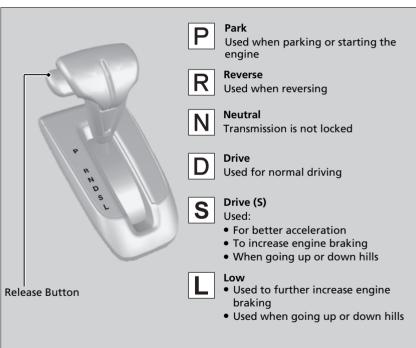
Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



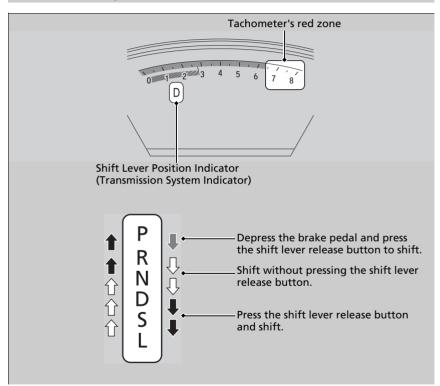
Shifting

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in \boxed{P} .

The vehicle may move very slightly even in $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from $\boxed{\mathbf{D}}$ to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the indicator of the currently selected gear position, or the transmission system indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

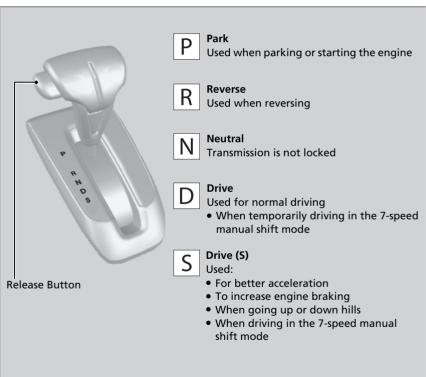
Depress the brake pedal first.

Models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



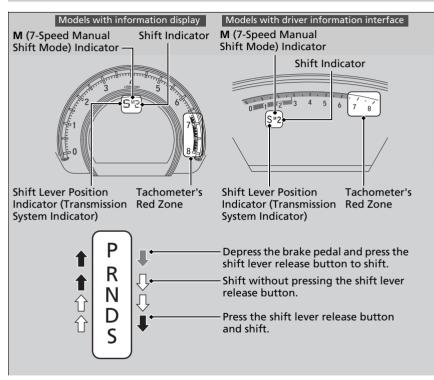
Shifting

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from $\boxed{\mathbf{D}}$ to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the indicator of the currently selected gear position, or the transmission system indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds. The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in S:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The \mathbf{M} indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from $\boxed{\textbf{S}}$ to $\boxed{\textbf{D}}$. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the M indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

∑7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

To improve fuel economy, the transmission may shift up to a higher speed than the seventh under certain circumstances. In this case, the number in the shift indicator remains as **7**.

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

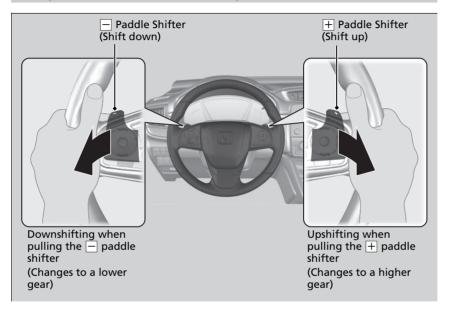
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



≥ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

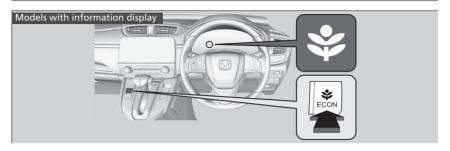
Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

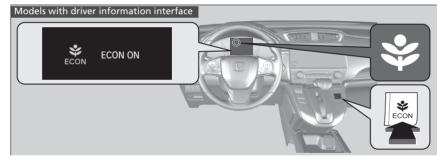
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

ECON Button





The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, heating* and cooling system*/climate control system* and cruise control.

≥ECON Button

While in ECON mode, the heating* and cooling system*/climate control system* has greater temperature fluctuations.

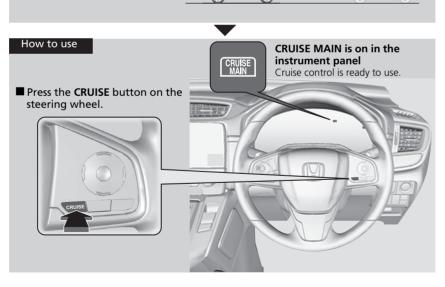
* Not available on all models

Cruise Control*

Models with information display

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use ■ Vehicle speed for cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~ ■ Shift positions for cruise control: In D or S Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you



AWARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

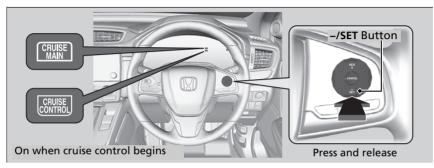
Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control: Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



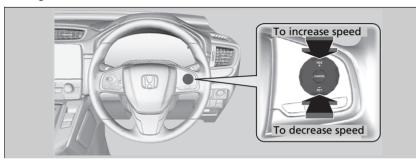
Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

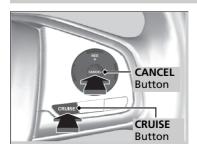
■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

▼To Adjust the Vehicle Speed Output Description: Description:

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

∑To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

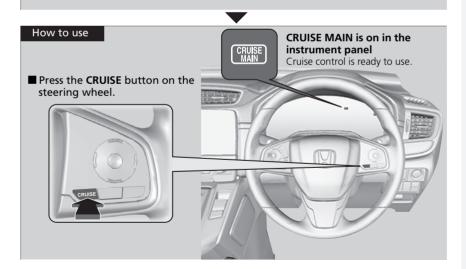
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Cruise Control*

Models with driver information interface

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.



AWARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

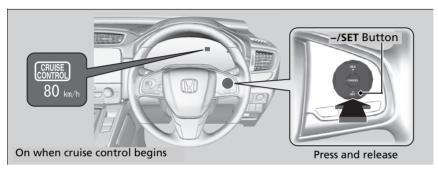
Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control: Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



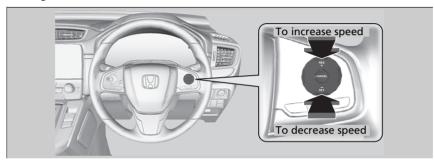
Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed. **CRUISE CONTROL** appears on the driver information interface.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



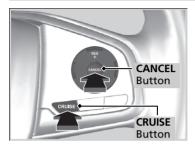
- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

∑To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

Continued 475

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

∑To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

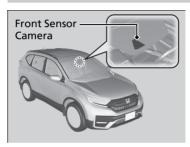
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Front Sensor Camera*

The camera, used in systems; such as LKAS, Road Departure Mitigation System, ACC with LSF, and Collision Mitigation Braking System, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

∑Front Sensor Camera *

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, bonnet, or front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

≫Front Sensor Camera*

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

If the Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Camera Temperature Too High*:

message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

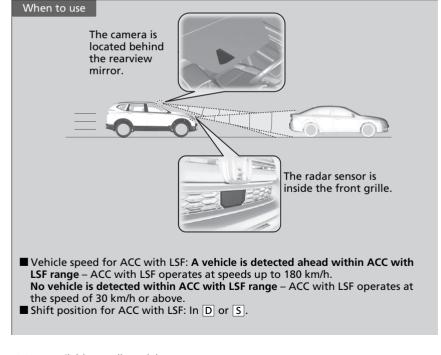
If the Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Clean Front Windshield*: message appears:

 Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with LSF slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

Magnetive Cruise Control (AC

AWARNING

Improper use of ACC with LSF can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with LSF only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

AWARNING

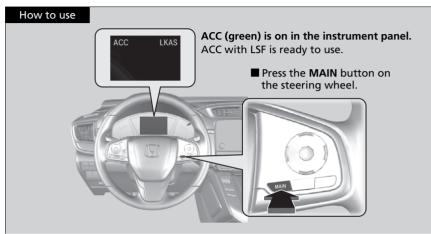
ACC with LSF has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with LSF. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

■ How to activate the system



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with LSF and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

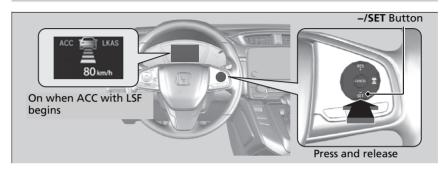
ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations P. 486

When not using ACC with LSF: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with LSF under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with LSF will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

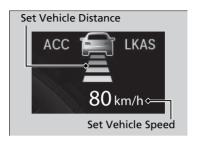


When driving about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the –/SET button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with LSF begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary and a vehicle is detected ahead, your vehicle speed can be set, even with the brake pedal depressed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



When ACC with LSF starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC with LSF, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

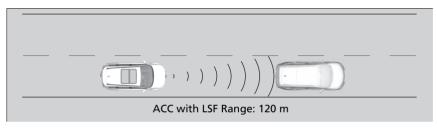
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with LSF monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with LSF range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with LSF system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following interval from the vehicle ahead.

▶ To Set or Change Following-Interval P. 489



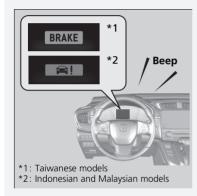


When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation ■

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.

Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with LSF may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

Continued 483

■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with LSF accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with LSF range.

ACC with LSF stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with LSF range.

When in Operation ■ The Company of the Compa

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with LSF detecting range. Change the ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep*1 or ACC Vehicle

Ahead Detect Beep*2 setting.

▶ Customized Features P. 157, 380

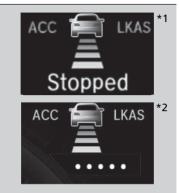
Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with LSF. Additionally, ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

► ACC with LSF Conditions and LimitationsP. 486

- *1: Models with colour audio system
- *2: Models with Display Audio

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped***1 or ** message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **-/ SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with LSF operates again within the prior set speed.

Stopped

ACC LKAS

*2

*2

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with LSF will operate again within the prior set speed.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop

AWARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with LSF system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with LSF.

- *1: Taiwanese models
- *2: Indonesian and Malaysian models

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

■ Environmental conditions

• Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

• Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

■ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC with LSF is shared with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS).

► Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 526

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

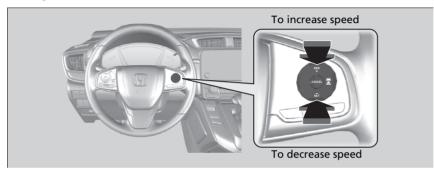
If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision

Continued 487

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button on the steering wheel.



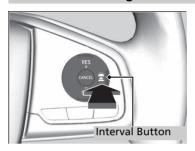
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

∑To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with LSF may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-Interval



Press the (Interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate followinginterval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued 489

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

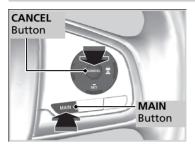
Following-Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		24.7 metres 1.1 sec	31.5 metres 1.1 sec
Middle		34.2 metres 1.5 sec	43.4 metres 1.5 sec
Long		46.8 metres 2.1 sec	60.8 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long		63.5 metres 2.9 sec	83.4 metres 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with LSF interval setting.

∑To Set or Change Following-Interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking distance from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum distances or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC with LSF, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
 - ACC with LSF indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

∑To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with LSF, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with LSF has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Continued 491

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with LSF is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with LSF to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with LSF range is too close to your vehicle
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with LSF automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

>> Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

Road Departure Mitigation System*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

■ Customized Features P. 380

As a visual alert, the Earle Departure* message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

► Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

* Not available on all models

■ Road Departure Mitigation System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

■ Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations P. 496

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

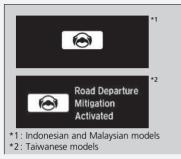
How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

- *3: Models with colour audio system
- *4: Models with Display Audio

➤ How the System Activates



If LKAS is off and you have selected **Narrow***3 or **Early***4 from the customized options using the driver information interface or the audio/information screen, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

Customized Features P. 157, 380

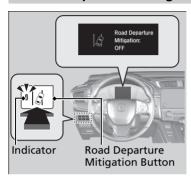
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the symmetric indicator comes and stays on.

Indicators P 102

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane

■ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

► The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

■ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface or the driver information interface or the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

≧ Customized Features P. 157, 380

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued 495

Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

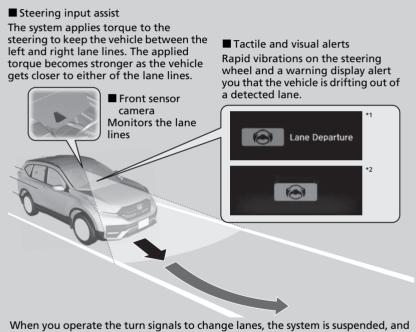
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

- *1: Taiwanese models
- *2: Indonesian and Malaysian models

∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* P. 128

Do not place objects on the instrument panel.

Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

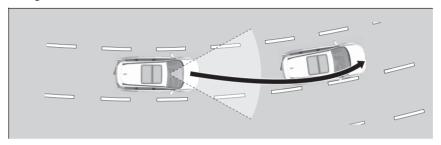
The LKAS Conditions and Limitations
P. 504

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

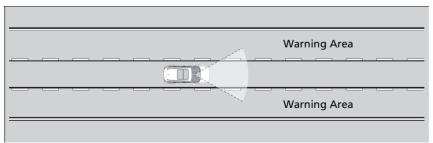
■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

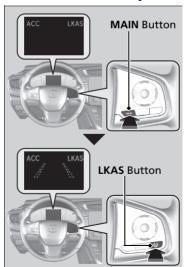
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

■ How to activate the system



- 1. Press the MAIN button.
 - ► The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.

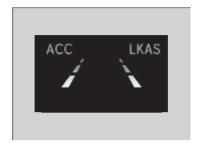
The system is ready to use.

- 2. Press the LKAS button.
 - Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.

The system is activated.

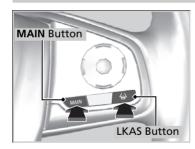
∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- **3.** Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - ➤ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

Cancel



To cancel the LKAS:

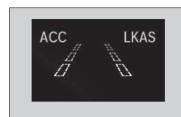
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with LSF on and off.

Continued 501



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
 - Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less
 - ► Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - ► The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
 - ► The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- When driving through a sharp curve.
- When driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the ABS or VSA systems engage.

A beeper will sound if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

■ The LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

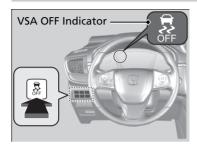
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The Main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the $\begin{tabular}{l} \blacksquare \end{tabular}$ button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the Button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

■ Agile Handling Assist

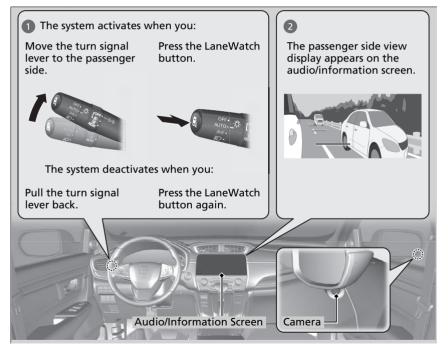
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

LaneWatch*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



∑LaneWatch*

AWARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off:** Changes the remaining Lane Watch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings. **⊇ Customized Features** P. 380

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

∑LaneWatch *

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen slightly look different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in \boxed{R} .

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

■ Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*

Your vehicle is equipped with the AWD system. When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilize all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

■ Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tyres of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tyres can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

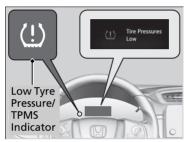
The AWD system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

■ Tyre and Wheel Replacement P. 596

* Not available on all models 511

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

∑Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

⚠ Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 594

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

∑Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.
- Snow chains are used.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ TPMS Initialisation

You must start TPMS initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the TPMS:

• Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

EXECUTE: Checking Tyres P. 594

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

▼TPMS Initialisation

The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 48–105 km/h.

During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before initialising the TPMS.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



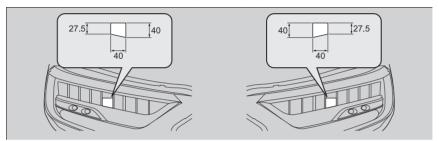
You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Select .
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Vehicle.
- **5.** Select **Deflation Warning System**.
- **6.** Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 6.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Models with LED headlights

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



- **1.** Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 40 mm long.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
- 2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

■ Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Braking

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. You can manually apply and release, or automatically release it.

■ Manual operations

Use the electric parking brake switch to apply or release the parking brake. Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.





■ To apply manually

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

► The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.

■ To release manually

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

- 1. Depress the brake pedal.
- **2.** Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

▶ Parking Brake

1.5 L engine models

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirling sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

If the Battery Is Dead P. 638

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.

Continued 517

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

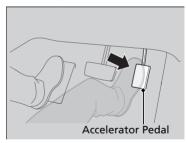
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF(LOCK).
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 519

■ To release automatically

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

► The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

Parking Brake

- When the engine is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

Models with ACC with LSF

- When the vehicle is stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- ABS indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- **1.** Set the shift lever to **P**.
- 2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.

 Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
- **3.** Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- **4.** When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
 - Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
 - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
 - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
 - ► To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- **2.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF(LOCK) and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with LSF and the automatic brake hold system.
 - ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

▶ Parking brake system

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyortype car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Continued 519

■ Foot Brake

1.5 L engine models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 524

▶ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 523

2.0 L engine models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 524

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 523

≫Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

1.5 L engine models

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS* or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

 The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on. ■ Activating the system



Brake Pedal



Accelerator Pedal

RAKE On

■ Canceling the system

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must

 The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

not be in P or R.

 Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The brake hold is disengaged and the vehicle starts to move.

 The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system releases the brake automatically. ■ Automatic Brake Hold

AWARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

AWARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

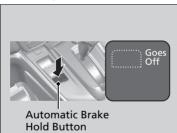
■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or R.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

► The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

₩ When Stopped P. 536

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

∑Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Mari-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS: You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow. The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Brake Assist System

■ Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

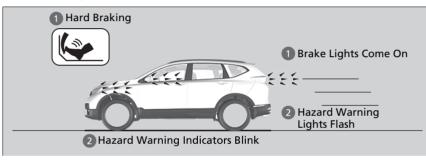
1.5 L engine models

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

○ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

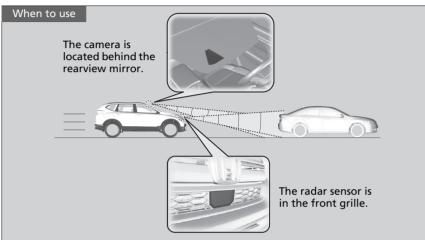
MBS Conditions and Limitations P. 532

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

Be careful not to have radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

■ How the system works



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

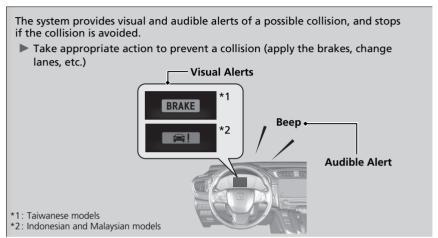
The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
- Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or traveling in your same direction.
- A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h, and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you traveling in your same direction.

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

Continued 527

■ When the system activates



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Long/Normal/Short***1 or **Far/Normal/Near***2) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through the driver information interface or the audio/information screen setting options.

■ Customized Features P. 157, 380

➤ How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 532

^{*1:} Models with colour audio system

^{*2:} Models with Display Audio

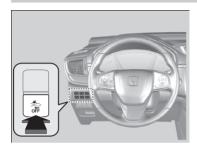
■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The sensors detect a vehicle	E-pretensioner*	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one	Normal Far Near Ahead Your Vehicle	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	_	When in Far , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near , at a shorter distance than in Normal .	_
Stage two	Your Vehicle Ahead	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Retracts the driver's seat belt gently a few times, providing a physical warning.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three	Your Vehicle Vehicle Ahead	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.	Forcefully tightens driver and front passenger seat belts.		Forcefully applied

* Not available on all models

CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

∑Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 532

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

■ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

For the CMBS to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 477

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be detected).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Continued 533

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly.
- **2.** With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- **3.** Move the shift lever from \boxed{D} to \boxed{P} .
- **4.** Turn off the engine.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

■Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.

Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

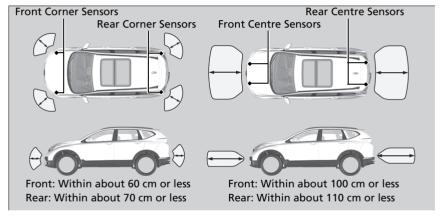
In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

Models with front and rear sensors

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



▶ Parking Sensor System *

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

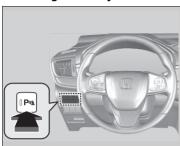
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

■ Parking sensor system on and off

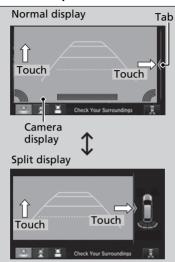


With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is not in $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

■ Screen Operation



You can switch the display to normal display or split display by touching the tab vicinity or on the camera display.

Screen Operation

If the parking sensor system is off or there is a malfunction in the system, the tab disappears, and the split display returns to the normal display.

You can also switch the display to normal display or split display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 380

Continued 539

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent		een the Bumper bstacle	Indicator	Driver information interface/Audio/information screen
beep	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors	indicator	Driver information interface/Audio/information screen
Moderate	_	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	
Short	Front: About 60-45 cm Rear: About 70-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle. *2 WARNING: Approaching Object

^{*1:} At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles. *2:Malaysian models *3:Taiwanese models

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

- **1.** Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- **2.** Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
- **3.** Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
- **4.** Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
 - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

∑Turning off All Rear Sensors

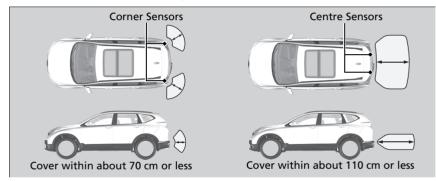
When you shift to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Parking Sensor System*

Models with rear sensors

The rear corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

▶ Parking Sensor System *

Even the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

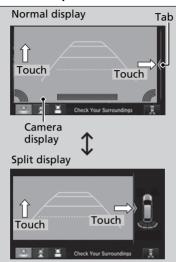
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

▶ Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

■ Screen Operation



You can switch the display to normal display or split display by touching the tab vicinity or on the camera display.

Screen Operation

If the parking sensor system is off or there is a malfunction in the system, the tab disappears, and the split display returns to the normal display.

You can also switch the display to normal display or split display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 373

Continued 543

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

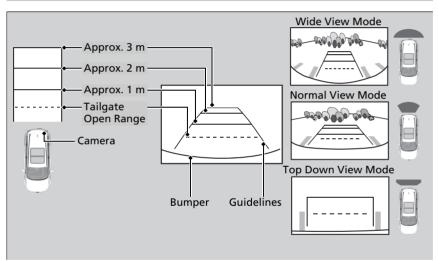
Length of the	Distance between the	bumper and obstacle	Indicator	Driver information interface/			
intermittent beep	Corner sensors	Centre sensors	mulcator	Audio/information screen			
Moderate	_	About 110-60 cm	Blinks in yellow*1				
Short	About 70-45 cm	About 60-45 cm					
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm	Blinks in amber	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.			
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in red	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.			

^{*1:}At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into ${\bf R}$.

■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



■ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Models with colour audio system

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

Models with Display Audio

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

: Wide view

: Normal view

🖺 : Top down view

All models

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$.

∑About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

Models with colour audio system

You can change the **Camera guideline On** or **Off** settings.

Customized Features P. 373

Models with Display Audio

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic**

Guideline settings.

Customized Features P. 380

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you put the

transmission into \mathbf{R} .

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move

Refueling

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Malaysian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models with 2.0 L engine

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular Unleaded petrol with a research octane of 90 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

≫Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Continued 547

Taiwanese models

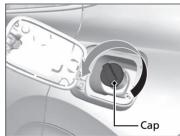
Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

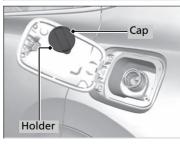
Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 57 L

How to Refuel







- **1.** Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
- 2. Turn off the engine.
- **3.** Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ► The fuel fill door opens.
- **4.** Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

- **5.** Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
- **6.** Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
 - ➤ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
- After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - ► Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

➤ How to Refuel

AWARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

Maintenance Schedule P. 563

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
 - Recommended Engine Oil P. 572
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

≥ Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



Turbo Engine Vehicle*

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor System*. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

∑Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information of when to replace them.

⊇ Oil Monitor System* P. 557

The temperature gauge pointer is at the \boxed{H} mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

* Not available on all models 551



This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance	
Inspection and Maintenance	. 554
Safety When Performing Maintenance.	55
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenanc	:e
Service	. 556
Oil Monitor System*	. 557
Maintenance Schedule	. 563
Maintenance Under the Bonnet	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet	568
Opening the Bonnet	. 570
Recommended Engine Oil	. 572
Oil Check	. 574
Adding Engine Oil	. 576

Engine Coolant	577
Transmission Fluid	581
Brake Fluid	582
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	583
Replacing Light Bulbs	584
Checking and Maintaining Wipe	er
Blades	590
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	594
Wear Indicators	595
Tyre Service Life	595
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	
Tyre Rotation	597

Snow Traction Devices	598
Battery	599
Remote Transmitter Care	602
leating* and Cooling System*/Clin	nate
Control System* Maintenance	603
Cleaning	
Interior Care	605
Exterior Care	607
Accessories and Modifications	610

* Not available on all models

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

► Maintenance Schedule P. 563

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - Brake Fluid P. 582
- $\bullet\,$ Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **≧** Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 594
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - Replacing Light Bulbs P. 584
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **≧** Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 590

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

AWARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

AWARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Continued 555

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - ► Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

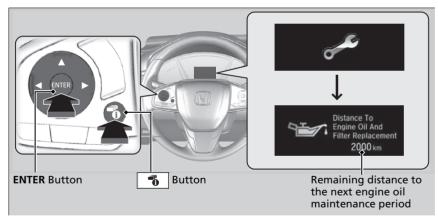
The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The oil monitor system indicator notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



- **1.** Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the button several times until is displayed.
- **3.** Press **ENTER** to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The maintenance service item and the remaining distance appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information ■

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:

Replace engine oil

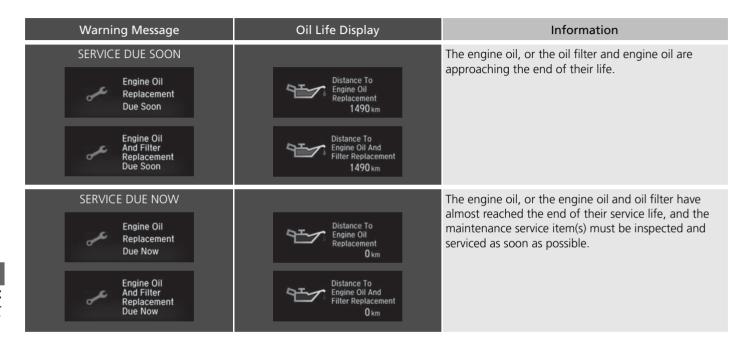
Replace engine oil and oil filter

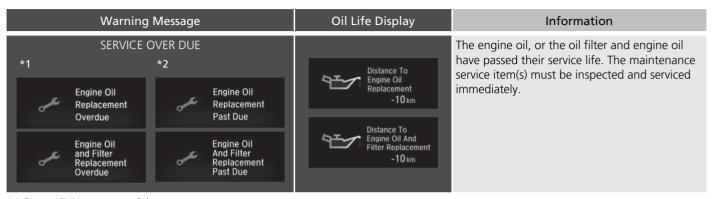
Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

The system message indicator (1) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

■ Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
NORMAL —	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement km Distance To Engine Oil And Filter Replacement km	When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement 2000 km Distance To Engine Oil And Filter Replacement 2000 km	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.



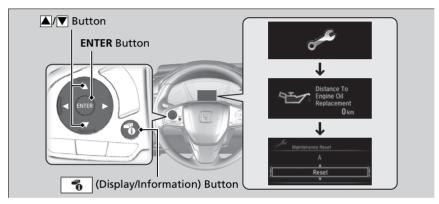


^{*1:}Except Taiwanese models

^{*2:}Taiwanese models

Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the (display/information) button several times until is displayed.
- **3.** Press the **ENTER** button to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
- **4.** Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
- Press the ▲/▼ button to select Reset.
 (You can also select Cancel to end the process).
- **6.** Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
 - ▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.

■ Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

Models with colour audio system

You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the driver information interface.

Customized Features P. 157

Models with Display Audio

You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.

⊇ Customized Features P. 380

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Service at the indicated distance or time -	whichever	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
comes first.		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil*1	Non Turbo	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
		Severe			E	very 5	,000 kr	n or 6	month	ıS		
	Tu	ırbo			Whe	en indi	cator co	omes o	n or 1	year		
Replace engine oil filter*1	Non Turbo	Normal				Every 2	20,000	km or	2 years	5		
		Severe				Every '	10,000	km or	1 year			
	Tu	ırbo	When indicator comes on or 2 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent*2 Direct injection models		Every 10,000 km or 1 year										
Replace air cleaner element			Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance			Every 120,000 km* ³									
Replace fuel filter*4		Normal	Every 150,000 km									
		Severe	Every 70,000 km*6									
Replace fuel filter*5		Normal				Ev	ery 180),000 k	cm			
Si		Severe	Every 110,000 km*6									
Replace spark plugs Iridium		Every 100,000 km										
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•	

- *1:Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to local warranty booklet.
- *2:Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following country, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details:
 Indonesian models
- *3:Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
- *4:Indonesian models
- *5:Models for other countries
- *6:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant		At 20	0,000 k	cm or 1	0 years	, there	after ev	ery 10	0,000	km or 5	years
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Replace rear differential fluid*		•				•				•	
Inspect front and rear brakes				E۱	very 10	,000 k	m or 6	mont	hs		
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years								
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)			Every year								
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least onc	e per month)	Every 10,000 km									
Visually	inspect the f	ollow	ing ite	ms:							
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots											
Suspension components				E۱	very 10	,000 k	m or 6	mont	hs		
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)											
All fluid levels and condition of fluid											
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

* Not available on all models Continued 565

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E

Maintenance Schedule

- The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

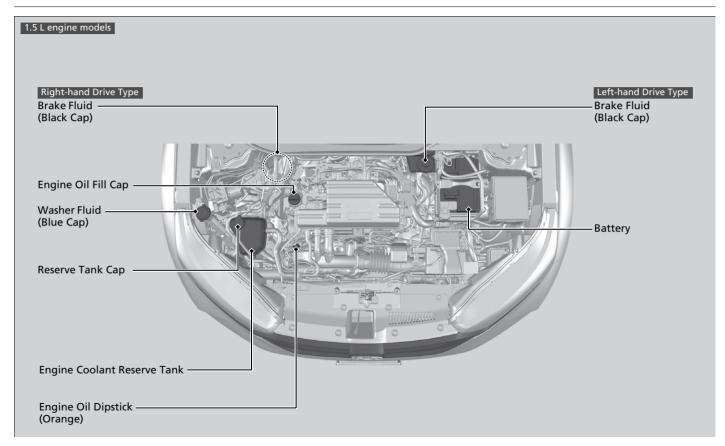
Maintenance Record

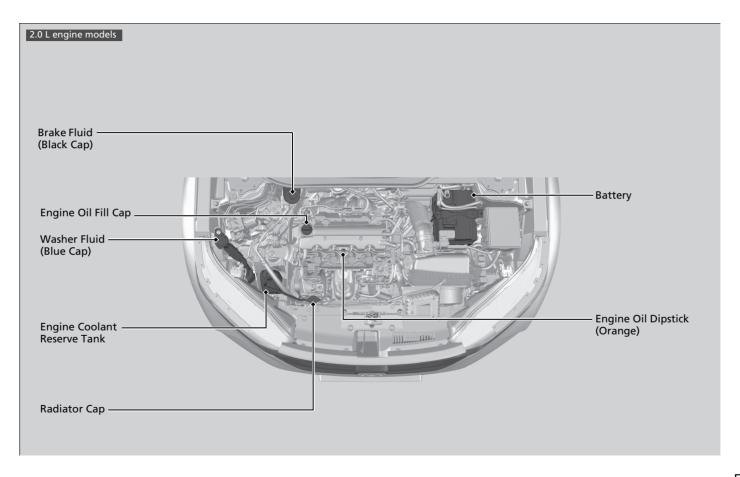
Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

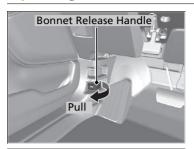
Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet





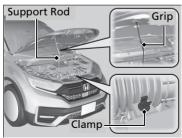
Opening the Bonnet



- **1.** Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- **2.** Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
 - ► The bonnet will pop up slightly.



3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

○ Opening the Bonnet

AWARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod:

Use the foam grip instead.

Malaysian models



- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual

All models

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

○ Opening the Bonnet

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter*.

Adding Engine Oil P. 576

■ Recommended Engine Oil

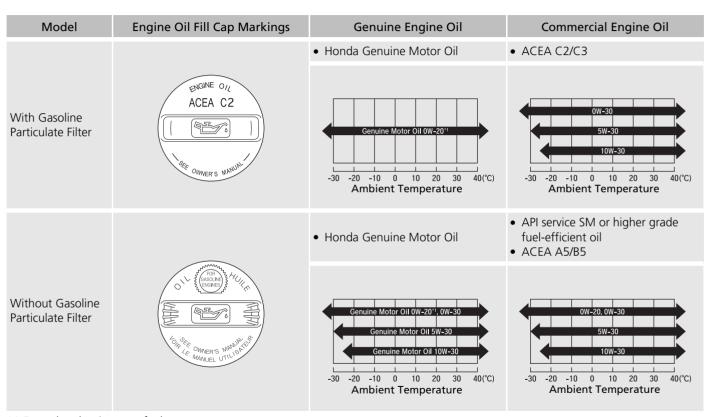
Engine Oil Additives

Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

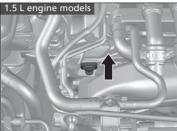


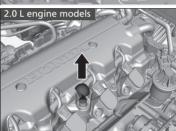
^{*1:}Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.





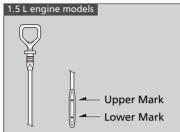
- **1.** Remove the dipstick (orange).
- **2.** Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
- **3.** Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

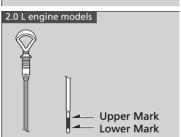
≫Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km.

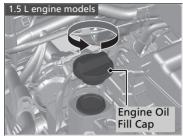
Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.





4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil





- **1.** Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
- 2. Add oil slowly.
- **3.** Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
- **4.** Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

1.5 L engine models

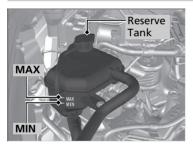
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Checking the Coolant



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - ► If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
- **3.** Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

∑Engine Coolant

AWARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

■ Adding the Coolant



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- **3.** Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- **4.** Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
- **5.** Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

2.0 L engine models

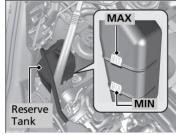
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank





- Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - ► If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
- **3.** Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

∑Engine Coolant

AWARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

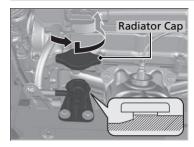
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- **3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- **4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- **5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule P. 563

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

○ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

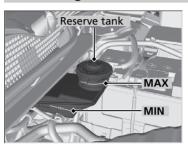
Do not mix HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Brake Fluid

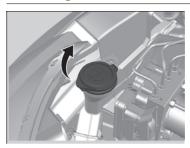
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

≥ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

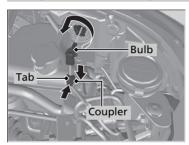
High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*

LED type*

Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*

LED type*

■ High Beam Headlights



- **1.** Push the tab to remove the coupler.
- **2.** Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
- **3.** Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
- **4.** Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.

Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter

LED type*

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

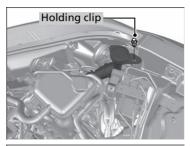
Models with halogen headlights

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

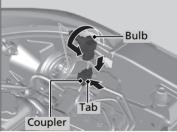
Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

■ Low Beam Headlights



Right side

1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.

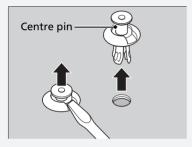


Both side

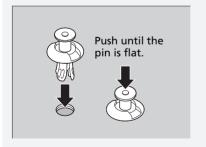
- 2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
- **3.** Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
- **4.** Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
- **5.** Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Front Fog Lights*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Lights

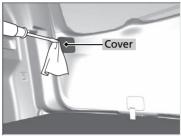
Brake/taillight and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

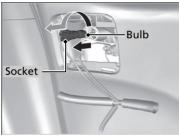
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED

Back-Up Light: 16W



- **1.** Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



- **2.** Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
- 3. Insert a new bulb.

∑Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Fog Light*

Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

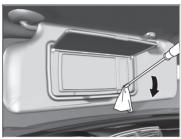
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

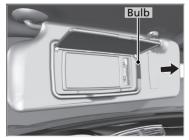
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 1.4 W



- **1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flattip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

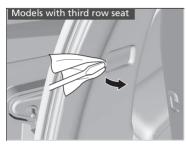


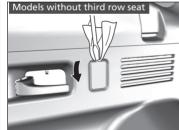
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Luggage Area Light Bulb(s)

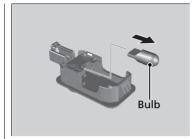
When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W





- **1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flattip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

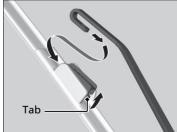
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

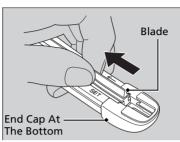


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

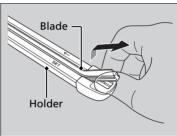
∑Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTIC<u>E</u>

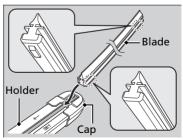
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

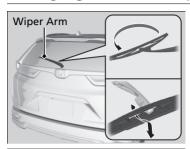


4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



- **5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
 - ➤ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
- **6.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
- **7.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

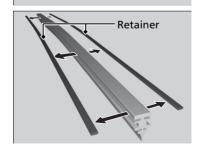
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



Blade

- 1. Raise the wiper arm off.
- **2.** Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

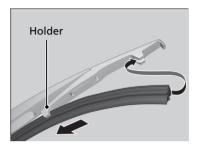


4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

∑Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.



- **5.** Slide the wiper blade onto the holder.
 - ► Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

Wear Indicators P. 595

Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

○ Checking Tyres

AWARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

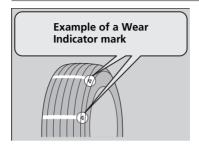
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Taiwanese models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the TPMS.

TPMS Initialisation P. 514

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

∑Tyre and Wheel Replacement

AWARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

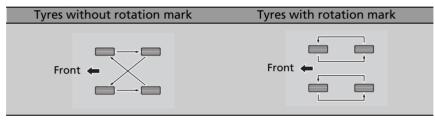
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

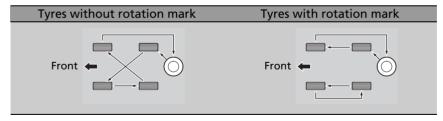
Models without a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



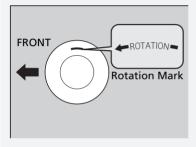
Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.



∑Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the TPMS.

TPMS Initialisation P. 514

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type	
235/65R17 104H	RUD-matic classic	4716134
235/60R18 103H	RUD-matic classic	4716134

- *1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

AWARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

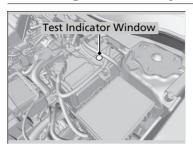
Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Maintenance

Checking the Battery



Models with test indicator window on the battery

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

The battery condition is monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on information display will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models without test indicator window on the battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the information display*/driver information interface* will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

• The clock resets.

■ Clock* P 166

Battery

AWARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

AWARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

≫ Battery

Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

All models

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately. Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* when you set the power mode to ON after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Remote Transmitter Care

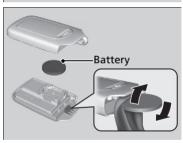
Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



- **2.** Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - ➤ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
 - ► Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
- **3.** Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

■ Replacing the Button Battery

AWARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

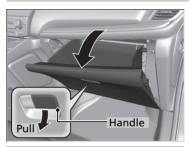
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

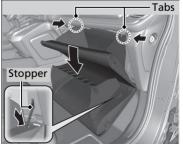
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 563

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

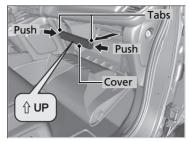


- **2.** Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel, then push down the stopper.
- **3.** Pivot the glove box out of the way.

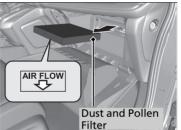
Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the Heating* and Cooling System*/ Climate Control System* Maintenance deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



- **5.** Remove the filter from the case.
- **6.** Install a new filter in the case.
 - ▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

≥ Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

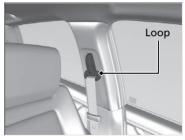
Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Continued 605

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Floor Mat*

The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

- 1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
- **2.** Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
- **3.** Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
- **4.** Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

○ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera* and the rainfall/light sensor*.

≫Floor Mat *

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Maintaining Genuine Leather[∗]

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

™Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories and Modifications

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs
 of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories
 installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's
 airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

Fuses P. 651

• Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

■ Accessories and Modifications

AWARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, twoway radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

I OOIS	
Types of Tools	614
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Changing a Flat Tyre*	616
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*	625
Engine Does Not Start	
Checking the Engine	635
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .	636
Emergency Engine Stop	637
If the Battery Is Dead	638
Shift Lever Does Not Move	641

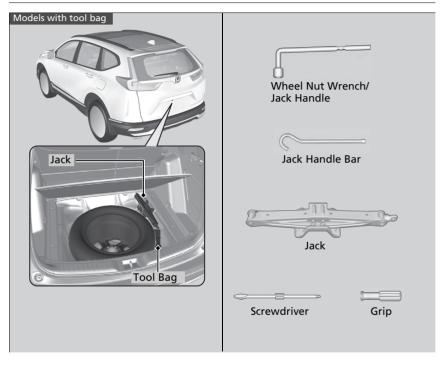
Overheating

now to naticile overfleating		
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking		
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes		
On 645		
If the Charging System Indicator Comes		
On 645		
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes		
On or Blinks 646		
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes		
On or Blinks 647		

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) co	omes or
or blinks at the same time when th	e Brake
System Indicator (Amber) comes or	ı648
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS)	Systen
Indicator Comes On	649
If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Ir	ndicato
Comes On or Blinks*	650
Fuses	
Fuse Locations	651
Inspecting and Changing Fuses	655
Emergency Towing	656
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate	

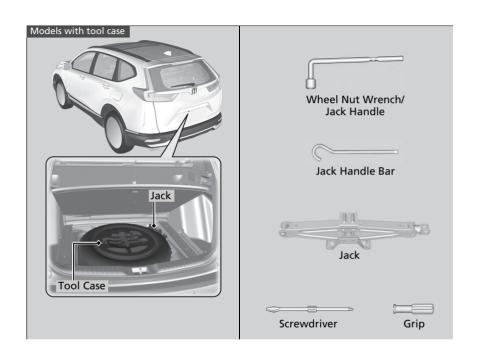
* Not available on all models

Types of Tools



∑Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.



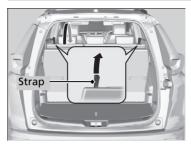
If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a full-size spare tyre.

- **1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- 3. Set the parking brake.
- **4.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

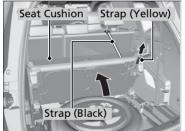


7 persons models

1. Lower the third row seat head restraint to its lowest position.

Unlock the seat-back by pulling the strap.

Unlock the seat-back by pulling the strap. Push the seat-back forward.



2. Unlock the seat cushion by pulling the strap (Yellow).

Push the seat cushion forward, then hook the strap (Black) to the head restraint.



All models

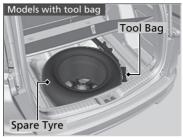
3. Open the luggage area floor lid.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the third row seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

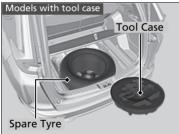
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



Models with tool bag

4. Take the tool bag out of the luggage area. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack-handle bar out of the tool bag.



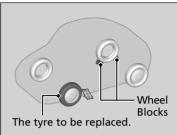
Models with tool case

4. Take the tool case out of the luggage area. Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.



All models

- **5.** Take the jack out of the spare tyre area.
- **6.** Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



7. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

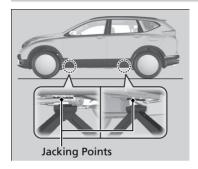


8. Place the spare tyre under the vehicle body (wheel side up) near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



9. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

■ How to Set Up the Jack



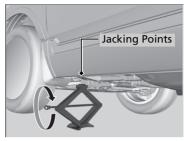
1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

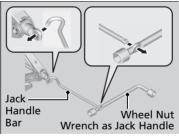
Mow to Set Up the Jack

AWARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.





- **2.** Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
 - ► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

■ How to Set Up the Jack

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

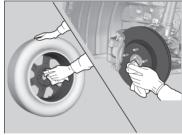
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Continued 621

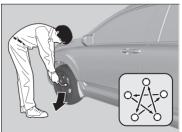
■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



- **2.** Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
- **3.** Mount the spare tyre.
- **4.** Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

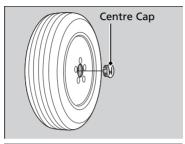
Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

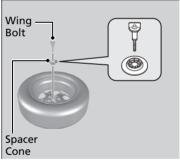
■ Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.



- **2.** Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
- **3.** Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
- **4.** Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag* or tool case*. Store the bag in the luggage area.
- **5.** Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.

Storing the Flat Tyre

AWARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

■ TPMS* and the Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. Department appears on the driver information interface, but this is normal.

Calibrate the TPMS* when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

TPMS Initialisation P. 514

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

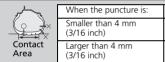
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

- 1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- 3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

∑Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

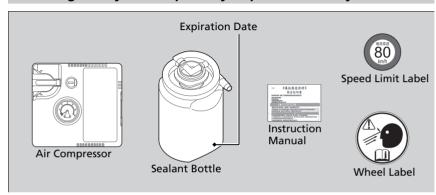


	When the puncture is:	Kit Use
× ×	Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
	Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- A rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



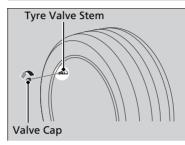


- **1.** Take the kit out of the luggage area.
- 2. Open the fastener of the kit.
- **3.** Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

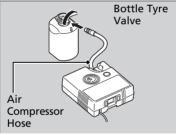
■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

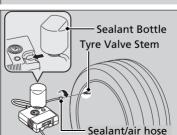
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.





- 2. Shake the sealant bottle.
- **3.** Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

- Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
- **5.** Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
 - ► Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

Injecting Sealant and Air

AWARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

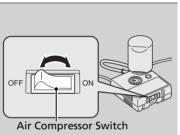
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.





- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - Accessory Power Socket P. 263
- **7.** Set the power mode to START without depressing the accelerator pedal, then start the engine.
 - Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98
- **8.** Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
 - ► The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- **9.** After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.
 - ► Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ➤ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
- **10.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

∑Injecting Sealant and Air

AWARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

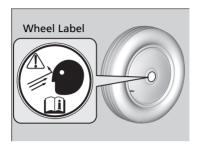
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.



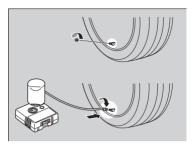
- **11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **12.** Unscrew the sealant hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **13.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - ► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



- **1.** Apply the speed limit label to the location as shown.
- **2.** Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 5 km.
 - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- **3.** Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Continued 629

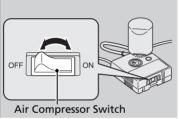


- **4.** Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
 - ➤ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
- **5.** If the air pressure is:
 - Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
 Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

Emergency Towing P. 656

- Required air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- ▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.





 Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than: required air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb): Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches: required air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb).

► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre P. 632

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.

Do not exceed 80 km/h.

- ➤ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.
- **6.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

≥

AWARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

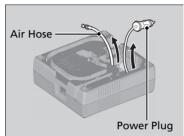
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.
Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

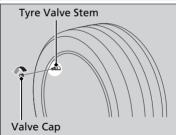
Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

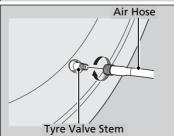
Continued 631

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.







- 1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.

 ☑ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair
 the Flat Tyre P. 626
- 2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
- **3.** Remove the air hose from the kit.
- **4.** Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
- Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem.Screw it until it is tight.

AWARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

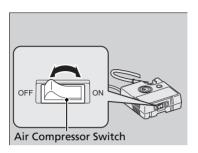
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - ► Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - Accessory Power Socket P. 263
- 7. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
 - ► In freezing temperatures, start the engine and leave it running while the flat tyre is being serviced.
 - Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98

Continued 633



- **8.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - ► The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - ► If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
- **9.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- **10.** Turn off the kit.
 - ► Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- **11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **12.** Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

∑Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

If the Battery Is Dead P. 638

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

Starter condition Checklist Starter doesn't turn or turns Check for a message on the driver information interface* over slowly. • If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears. The battery may be dead. Check **▶** If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 636 Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. each of the items on the right and **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 205 respond accordingly. Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. • If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all **Battery** P. 599 • If the interior lights come on normally > Fuses P. 651 Review the engine start procedure. The starter turns over normally, but the engine doesn't start. Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ■ Starting the Engine P. 455 There may be a problem with a Check the immobilizer system indicator. fuse. Check each of the items on When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. the right and respond accordingly. Immobilizer System P. 195 Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. **▶ Fuel Gauge** P. 145 Check the fuse. Check all fuses or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ☐ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 655 If the problem continues: **Emergency Towing** P. 656

* Not available on all models

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

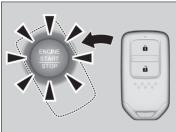
If the beeper sounds, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start

Models with driver information interface

The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface.

All models

Start the engine as follows:



ENGINE START STOP

- 1. Touch the centre of the ENGINE START/ STOP button with the H logo on the keyless remote while the ENGINE START/STOP button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
 - ► The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
- 2. Depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the ENGINE START/STOP button changes from flashing to on.
 - ► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), put the transmission into **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

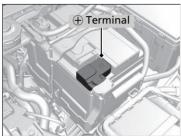
Emergency Engine Stop ■

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

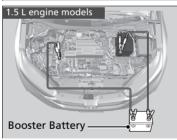
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as the audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the fuse box cover on your vehicle's battery positive \oplus terminal.



- **2.** Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's \bigoplus terminal.
- **3.** Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15- volts. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
- **4.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

≥ If the Battery Is Dead

AWARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

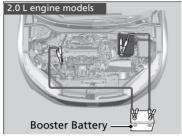
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

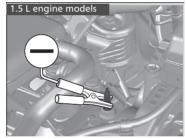
NOTICE

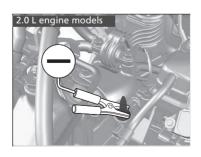
If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.







- **5.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt (as shown). Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- **6.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
- **7.** Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order:

- **1.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
- **2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \bigcirc terminal.
- **3.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's (+) terminal.
- **4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

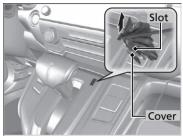
What to Do After the Engine Starts

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, Road Departure Mitigation System*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, VSA OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*, low tyre pressure/Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface* when you set the power mode to ON. after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the $\begin{tabular}{c} {\bf P} \\ {\bf position}. \end{tabular}$

■ Releasing the Lock



- **1.** Set the parking brake.
- **2.** Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
- **3.** Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flattip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot (as shown in image), and remove the cover.



- **4.** Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
- **5.** While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into [N].
 - ► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot message appears on the driver information interface*.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

- 1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
- 2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - No steam or spray present:

Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

► Steam or spray present:

Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

AWARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

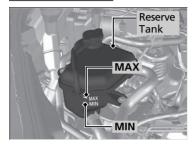
NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the $\boxed{\text{H}}$ mark may damage the engine.

Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface* may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do

1.5 L engine models



- **1.** Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle goes down.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
- **2.** Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level, and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, or no coolant in the tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. Add coolant until it reaches the MAX mark and put the cap back on.

AWARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

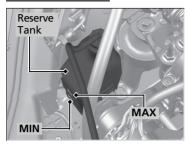
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

Continued 643

2.0 L engine models



- Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle goes down.
 - ► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
- **2.** Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
 - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it, and check the temperature gauge.

If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

AWARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

- What to do as soon as the indicator comes on
- **1.** Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
- **2.** If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.
- What to do after parking the vehicle
- 1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
- **2.** Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

Oil Check P. 574

- **3.** Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
 - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
 - ► The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating* and cooling system*/climate control system*, rear demister, and other electrical systems. Immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

* Not available on all models

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose*.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.
- What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

≥ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

• There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

 Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ≥ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on P. 648

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically

 Parking Brake P. 517
- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
 - Preventing the vehicle from moving



(Amber)

Put the transmission into P.

• If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

■If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and the Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks*



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully avoiding abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ► Calibrate the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.
 - TPMS Initialisation P. 514
- What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

■If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks*

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Fuses

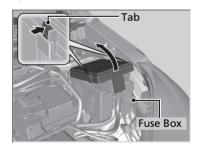
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number. Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
	<u>l</u> i	-	(30 A)
	(i	Electric Brake Booster*	40 A
	<u>l</u> i	Main Fan Motor	30 A
1	<u>li</u>	Relay Module 1	30 A
	<u> </u>	IG Main 2	30 A
	<u>li</u>	Relay Module 2	30 A
	-	Battery	125 A*1 100 A*2
	(P)	EPS	70 A
	=	IG Main 1	30 A
2	∏i	Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
2	☐i	Fuse Box Option Fuse Box	(40 A) 60 A
2		•	

		Cinavit Duatastad	Λ
		Circuit Protected	Amps
	(III)	Rear Defroster	40 A
	☐i	Starter Motor	30 A
3	(li	Fuse Box 2	40 A
3	(li	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	<u>li</u>	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	35	Blower Motor	40 A
	□i	Option Block	(40 A)
4	∏i	Option Block 2	(40 A)
4	□i	-	(30 A)
	-	Power Tail Gate*	(40 A)
5	(II	VB ACT*1 _*2	(7.5 A)
6	\bigoplus	Washer	15 A
7	(li	IGP	15 A

^{*1:1.5} L engine models

^{*2:2.0} L engine models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
8	<u>l</u> i	FI Sub*1 DBW*2	15 A
9	(03)	Stop Lights	10 A
10	<u>l</u> i	Injector*1 -*2	(20 A)
11	<u>l</u> i	LAF	7.5 A
12	<u>i</u>	FI ECU*1 _*2	(10 A)
	-	-	_*2, *4
13	<u>l</u> i	LCM	(20 A)*3 (15 A)*1, *4
14		Hazard	10 A
15	(li	IG Coil	15 A
16	<u>l</u> i	Transmission*1 _*2	(15 A) 15 A
17	<u>i</u>	LCM VBU –	(15 A)*3, *5 (7.5 A)*4, *7
18	∏i	Back Up	10 A
19	∏i	Audio	(15 A)
20	<u>l</u> i	AWD*	(20 A)
21	<u>i</u>	-	(20 A)*1 -*2

		Circuit Protected	Amps
22	Πi	Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)*1
	10		10 A*2
23	∏i	VMP MAIN VMP	(20 A)*5 10 A*7
24	b	Horn	10 A
		IGP2 SUB	7.5 A*1
25	_	_	_*2
26	-		_
26	<u>l</u>	_	(10 A)*5, *6
27	<u>l</u> i	_	(30 A)*1
	-		_*2
28	<u>l</u> i	_	(7.5 A)*1
	-		_*2
29	-	-	-
30	_	-	_
31	<u>l</u> i	VMP	(10 A)*5
	-	-	_*7
32	l	LCM VBU (Right)	(7.5 A)*3
	-	_	- *7
33	<u>i</u>	LCM VBU (Left)	(7.5 A)*3
	-	-	_*7
34	∏i	USB Charger	(7.5 A)*5
	_	- -	_*7

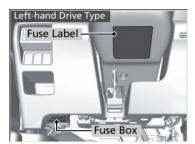
		Circuit Protected	Amps
35	<u>i</u>	LCM	(10 A)*3
33	-	-	- *7
36	<u>l</u> i	LCM	(10 A)*3
50	_	-	- *7

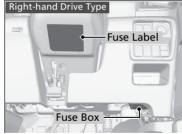
^{*1:1.5} L engine models
*2:2.0 L engine models
*3:Models with panoramic roof
*4:Models without panoramic roof
*5:Models with wireless charger
*6:Panoramic roof models without wireless charger

^{*7:}Models without wireless charger

■ Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.





Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

			9
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	□i	Accessory	10 A
2	∏i	Key Lock	5 A
3	Πi	Option	10 A
4	Πi	Option	5 A
5	Πi	Option	10 A
6	*	SRS Indicator	10 A
7		Meter	10 A
8	(Fuel Pump	15 A
9	*	A/C	10 A
10	<u>[i</u>	Accessory Power Socket (Centre Console)	(20 A)
11	Πi	Engine Control	5 A
12		Passenger's Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Driver's Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	REAR L	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	PASSENGER	Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A

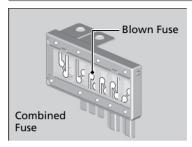
		Circuit Protected	Amps
17	□i	Transmission	(10 A)
18	DRIVER	Front Driver's Side Lumber Support*	(10 A)
19	డ	Sunroof*	(20 A)
20	□i	Starter	10 A
21	<u> </u>	ACG	10 A
22	::: : D	Daytime Running Light	10 A
23	□i	Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
24	Πi	Option	5 A
25		-	(10 A)
26		Passenger's Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	REAR R	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	DRIVER	Driver's Side Power Window	20 A

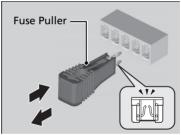
		Circuit Protected	Amps
29	∏i	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	□i	Smart Entry	10 A
31	DRIVER	Driver's Side Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
32	FRONT	_	(20 A)
33	DRIVER	Driver's Side Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
34	□i	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	×	SRS	10 A
36	Πi	HAC Option	20 A
37	<u> </u>	Trailer	15 A
38		Driver's Side Door Lock	10 A
39		-	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
а	~	Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
b	PASSENGER	Passenger's Side Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
C	PASSENGER	Passenger's Side Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
d		Panorama Shade Motor*	(20 A)
	RR 🍣	_*1	(20 A)
е	<u>i</u>	Rear Blower Motor* ²	(20 A)
f	<u> </u>	EPT L*	(20 A)
g	<u> </u>	EPT R*	(20 A)
h	<u>li</u>	-	(20 A)

^{*1:}Except Right-hand Drive Type *2:Right-hand Drive Type

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
- 2. Remove the fuse box cover.
- **3.** Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
- **4.** Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller, and replace it with a new one.

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 651, 653

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

All models

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

2WD models

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

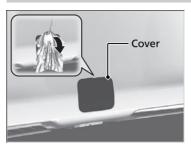
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Improper towing, such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate



If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure:

- **1.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
 - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



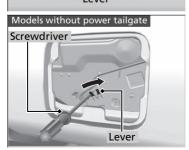
2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right using a flat-tip screw driver.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model		CR-V
Curb Weight		1,500-1,543 kg ^{*1} 1,505 kg ^{*2} 1,516 kg ^{*3} 1,545-1,598 kg ^{*4} 1,607-1,645 kg ^{*5}
Maximum Permissible	2WD	2,100 kg* ⁶ 2,300 kg* ⁷
Weight	AWD	2,200 kg
Maximum	Front	1,100 kg* ⁶ 1,150 kg* ⁷
Permissible Axle Weight	Rear	1,050 kg* ⁸ 1,100 kg* ⁹ 1,250 kg* ¹⁰

- *1: Taiwanese models
- *2: Indonesian models with 2.0 L engine
- *3: Malaysian models with 2.0 L engine *4: Malaysian models with 1.5 L engine *5: Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine
- *6: Models without third row seat
- *7: Models with third row seat
- *8: 2WD models without third row seat
- *9: AWD models
- *10:2WD models with third row seat

■ Engine Specifications

Туре	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC*1 Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder SOHC*2
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm* ¹ 81.0 x 96.9 mm* ²
Displacement	1,498 cm ^{3*1} 1,997 cm ^{3*2}
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1*1 10.6 : 1*2
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR8J8SY*1 SILZKR7C11S*2

- *1: 1.5 L engine models *2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Fuel

	Except Taiwanese models
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number
Type	91 or higher
1,100	Taiwanese models
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number
	92 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	57 L

■ Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)/45AH(20)*1			
	36AH(5)/47AH(20)*2			

- *1: Except Malaysian models *2: Malaysian models

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity 2.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED* 55 W (H11)*	
Headlights (High Beam)	LED* 60 W (HB3)*	
Front Fog Lights*	LED	
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED	
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED	
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED	
Taillights	LED	
Brake/Taillights	LED	
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED	
Back-Up Lights	16 W	
Rear Fog Light*	LED	
High-Mount Brake Light	LED	
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED	
Interior Lights		
Map Light	LED	
Ceiling Light	LED	
Luggage Area Light	5 W	
Vanity Mirror Lights*	1.4 W	

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4	

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.7 L*1 4.3 L* ²

- *1: 2WD models
- *2: AWD models

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Models with gasol particulate filter	ine
	Honda Genuine Motor C ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5V	
	Models without garticulate filter	asoline
	Honda Genuine Motor C 5W-30, 10W-30 ACEA A5/B5, API service grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5	e SM or higher
Capacity	Change	3.2 L*1 3.5 L*2
	Change including filter	3.5 L*1 3.7 L*2

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models
Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 572

■ Rear Differential Fluid*

Specified	Honda DPSF-II	
Capacity	Change	1.2 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.5 L engine models 6.19 L'1 6.22 L' ² , '3 (change including the remaining 0.75 L in the reserve tank) 2.0 L engine models 5.85 L' ² 6.14 L' ³ (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank)
*1: Taiwa	anese models

- *2: Indonesian models
- *3: Malaysian models

■ Tyre

,		
	Size*1	235/65R17 104H
Regular	SIZC	235/60R18 103H
negulai	Pressure	See the label on driver's
	i lessure	doorjamb
· ·	Size*1	235/65R17 104H
	SIZE .	235/60R18 103H
Spare*	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre.
(Full-size tyre)		See the label on driver's
		doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J*2
	Regulai	18 x 7 1/2J*3
	Full-size Spare*	17 x 7 1/2J*2
	i uli-size spale	18 x 7 1/2J*3

^{*1:} Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

■ Brake

Туре	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Air Conditioning

	9
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
	1.5 L engine models
	435 - 485 g*1
Charge Quantity	655 - 705 g*²
	2.0 L engine models
	415 - 465 g

^{*1:} Except Indonesian models
*2: Indonesian models

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,623 mm* ^{1, *2} 4,625 mm* ³
Width		1,855 mm
Height		1,679 mm* ^{1,*4} 1,680 mm* ³ 1,689 mm* ⁵
Wheelbase		2,660 mm*1, *3 2,662 mm*2
Track	Front	1,600 mm* ³ 1,601 mm* ¹ 1,603 mm* ²
Track -	Rear	1,615 mm* ³ 1,617 mm* ¹ 1,630 mm* ²

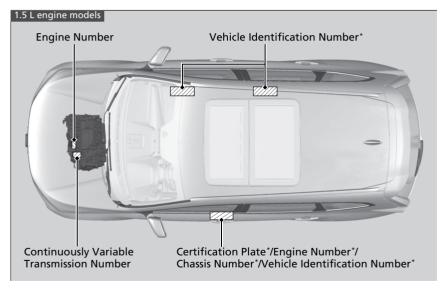
- *1: Indonesian models
- *2: Malaysian models
- *3: Taiwanese models
- *4: Malaysian models with 2WD *5: Malaysian models with AWD

^{*2:} Models with 235/65R17 tyres *3: Models with 235/60R18 tyres

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

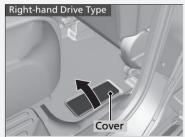
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

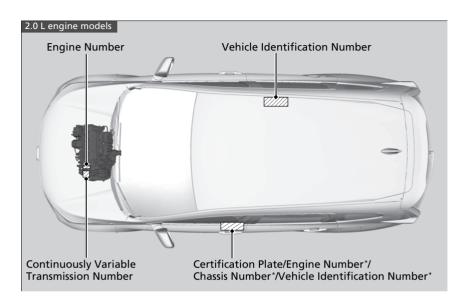


■Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.







Devices that Emit Radio Waves[⋆]

Taiwanese models

The Regulations by Ministry of Transport for the Control of Low Power Equipment:

The regulation of Article 12:

Without permission granted by the DGT, any company, enterprise, or user is not allowed to change frequency, enhance transmitting power or alter original characteristic as well as performance to a approved low power radio- frequency devices.

The regulation of Article 14:

The low power radio-frequency devices shall not influence aircraft security and interfere legal communications; If found, the user shall cease operating immediately until no interference is achieved. The said legal communications means radio communications is operated in compliance with the Telecommunications Act. The low power radio-frequency devices must be susceptible with the interference from legal communications or ISM radio wave radiated devices.

Utility Compliance*

Environmental Protection Regulation

Taiwanese models

NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.



Numbers		Defrosting the Windscreen and		Audio Remote Controls	29
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	467	Windows		Audio System	292, 298, 310
7-Speed Maridar Stifft Mode	407	Dust and Pollen Filter	603	Adjusting the Sound	303, 33
		Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	283	AM/FM Radio	305, 34
Α		Sensor		Android Auto	36
AAC	310 3/16	Synchronization Mode	286	Apple CarPlay	35
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)		Using Automatic Climate Control .	278	Audio/Information Screen	299, 31
Accessories and Modifications		Air Conditioning System		Changing the Home Screer	Icon Layout 320
Accessory Power Sockets		(Heating and Cooling System)	272	Changing the Screen Interfa	ace 33!
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with		Cooling		Closing Apps	33
		Defrosting the Windscreen and		Customizing the Meter	32
Low Speed Follow (LSF)	. 122, 479	Windows	277	Display Setup	304, 339
Adding	F77 F70	Dust and Pollen Filter	603	Error Messages	36
Coolant	•	Heating	274	General Information	36
Engine Oil		Air Pressure		Home Screen	
Washer		Airbags	59	How to use Siri Eyes Free	350
Additives, Engine Oil	5/2	After a Collision	62	iPod	
Adjusting		Airbag Care		Limitations for Manual Ope	
Armrest		Event Data Recorder		Menu Customize	
Front Seats		Front Airbags (SRS)		MP3/WMA/AAC	
Head Restraints		Indicator		MP4	
Headlights		Sensors		Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	
Mirrors		Side Airbag		Recommended Devices	•
Rear Seats		Side Curtain Airbag		Remote Controls	
Steering Wheel		All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System		Selecting an Audio Source.	
Temperature	155	AM/FM Radio		Status Area	
Adjusting the Sound	. 303, 338	Android Auto		USB Flash Drives	
Agile Handling Assist	508			USB Port(s)	
Air Conditioning System		Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)		. ,	
(Climate Control System)	278	Indicator		Wallpaper Setup	•
Changing the Mode	283	Apple CarPlay		WAV	

Audio System Basic Operation 298, 316	Foot Brake520	Child Restraint System 70
Audio/Information Screen 299, 317	Indicator 102	Booster Seats
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 181	Parking Brake 517	Child Restraint System for Infants
Auto High-Beam 217	Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 225	
Automatic Brake Hold 521	Bulb Replacement 584	
Indicator 104, 521	Back-Up Lights 587	
Automatic Brake Hold System	Brake Lights 586	5 Larger Children 95
Indicator104	Daytime Running Lights 586	Rearward Facing Child Restraint System 74
Automatic Folding Door Mirror	Fog Lights 586	
Function 231	Front Turn Signal Lights 586	Using Tether 94
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 223	Headlights584	Child Safety 70
Automatic Lighting 211	High-Mount Brake Light 588	Childproof Door Locks
Average Fuel Economy	Luggage Area Light 589	Childproof Door Locks
Average Speed	Position Lights 586	Cleaning the Exterior 607
AWD (All-Wheel Drive) 511	Rear Licence Plate Light 588	Cleaning the Interior 605
	Rear Turn Signal Lights 586	Climate Control System 278
D	Side Turn Signal/	Changing the Mode
В	Emergency Indicator Lights 586	
Battery	Taillights 586, 587	7 Windows 284
Charging System Indicator 105, 645	Vanity Mirror Lights 589	Dust and Pollen Filter 603
If the Battery Is Dead 638	Bulb Specifications 661	Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 599		Sensors 289
Belts (Seat)	C	Synchronization Mode
Beverage Holders 261	C	Using Automatic Climate Control 278
Bluetooth® Audio 313, 349	Caller ID Information 417	⁷ Clock 166
Booster Seats (For Children)96	Carbon Monoxide Gas 98	3 CMBS
Brake System	Cargo Hook268	(Collision Mitigation Braking System) 526
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 523	Carrying Luggage 449, 451	Coat Hook 267
Automatic Brake Hold 521	Certification Label 663	Collision Mitigation Braking System
Brake Assist System 524	Changing Bulbs 584	(CMBS) 526
Fluid 582	Charging System Indicator 105, 645	-)

Continuously Variable Transmission 462	Dipstick (Engine Oil)	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	Directional Signals (Turn Signals) 209	Indicator 112, 649
Creeping	Display Setup 304, 339	Emergency 656
Fluid 581	Display/Information Button 317	Emergency Stop Signal 525
Kickdown 462	Door Mirrors 230	Engine
Operating the Shift Lever 28, 463, 464, 466	Doors	Coolant 577
Shift Lever Does Not Move 641	Auto Door Locking 181	If the Battery Is Dead
Shifting	Door Open Indicator 44, 112	Number 663
Controls 165	Keys 168	Oil 572
Coolant (Engine) 577, 579	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	Starting 455
Adding to the Radiator 578, 580	Inside 179	Switch Buzzer
Adding to the Reserve Tank 577, 579	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	Engine Coolant 577, 579
Overheating 642	Outside 171	Adding to the Radiator 578, 580
Creeping	Lockout Prevention System 178	Adding to the Reserve Tank 577, 579
(Continuously Variable Transmission) 462	Driver Information Interface 149	Overheating 642
Cruise Control 470, 473	Driver's Seat Lumbar Support 233	Engine Oil 572
Indicator 117	Driving 447	Adding 576
Cup Holders 261	Braking 517	Checking 574
Customized Features 157, 373, 380	Continuously Variable Transmission 462	Low Oil Pressure Indicator 104, 645
	Cruise Control 470, 473	Recommended Engine Oil 572
n	Shifting Gear 463, 465	ENGINE START/STOP Button 205
D	Starting the Engine	Environmental Protection Regulation 666
Daytime Running Lights 221	Driving Guidelines for Your Utility	e-pretensioners51
Dead Battery 638	Vehicle	EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 112
Defaulting All the Settings 405	Dust and Pollen Filter 603	Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 98
Defrosting the Windscreen and		Exterior Care (Cleaning) 607
Windows	E	Exterior Mirrors 230
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 665	E	
Dimming	Eco Assist System 11	
Headlights 210	ECON Button 469	

F	Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions 550	Speed Dial	421, 440
Features	Fuel Fill Cap 31, 549	To Clear the System	419
Filter	Fuel Fill Door 31, 549	Hazard Warning Button	4, 5
Dust and Pollen 603	Fuses 651	Head Restraints	240
	Inspecting and Changing 655	Headlights	210
Floor Mats	Locations 651, 653	Adjuster	216
		Aiming	584
Fluids	G	Auto High-Beam	217
Brake	G	Automatic Operation	211
Continuously Variable Transmission 581	Gauges 145	Dimming	210, 221
Engine Coolant	Gear Shift Lever Positions	Operating	210
	Continuously Variable	Heating and Cooling System	272
FM/AM Radio	Transmission	Cooling	276
Fog Lights	Glass (care) 606, 608	Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Folding Down the Rear Seats	Glove Box	Windows	277
Folding Down the Second Row Seat 247		Heating	274
Folding Down the Third Row Seat 248	Н	HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)	406, 427
Foot Brake 520	П	High Beam Indicator	114
Four-Wheel Drive System 511	Hands Free Access 187	Hill Start Assist System	459
Front Airbags (SRS) 61	Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) 406, 427	Honda TRK	625
Front Fog Light Indicator 115	Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook		
Front Seats	and Call History		
Adjusting 232	HFT Buttons 406, 427	I	
Front Sensor Camera 477	HFT Menus	Identification Numbers	663
Fuel	HFT Status Display	Engine and Transmission	663
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions 550	Limitations for Manual Operation 407, 429	Vehicle Identification	
Gauge 145	Making a Call 423, 442	If the Battery Is Dead	638
Instant Fuel Economy151	Options During a Call 426, 446	Illumination Control	
Low Fuel Indicator	Phone Setup	Knob	
Range 147, 151	Receiving a Call	Immobilizer System	
Recommendation 547	Ring Tone	Indicator	
Refueling 547	5	marcator	110

Indicators 102	Seat Belt Reminder 107	Kickdown
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 108	Security System Alarm 116	(Continuously Variable Transmission) 462
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with	Shift Lever Position 105	
Low Speed Follow (LSF) 122, 123, 479	Shift to Park 118	1
Automatic Brake Hold 104, 521	Supplemental Restraint System 109	L
Brake Depressing 118	System Message 114	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 498
Charging System 105	Transmission	LaneWatch509
Collision Mitigation Braking System	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 114	Lights 210, 584
(CMBS) 124, 125, 126	VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) system 110	Automatic
Cruise Control 117, 471, 474	VSA OFF 111, 507	Bulb Replacement 584
Cruise Main 117, 470, 473	Instrument Panel 101	Daytime Running Lights 221
Door Open 112	Brightness Control	Fog Lights 214
ECON Mode 117	Interior Lights	High Beam Indicator Light 114
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 112	Interior Rearview Mirror 229	Interior
Front Fog Light 115	iPod 307, 343	Light Control Indicator 115
High Beam 114		Light Switches
Immobilizer System 116	1	Lights On Indicator
Keyless Access System 117	J	Turn Signals
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 123	Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 620	Load Limits
Light Control 115		Locking/Unlocking 168
Lights On 114	K	Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 181
Low Fuel 108	K	Childproof Door Locks
Low Oil Pressure 104	Key Number Tag 169	From Inside
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS 113	Keyless Lockout Prevention 178	From Outside 171
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 105	Keys 168	Keys 168
Parking Brake and Brake System 102	Lockout Prevention	Using a Key 177
Parking Brake and Brake System	Number Tag 169	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the
(Amber) 103, 104	Rear Door Won't Open 180	Outside 171
Rear Fog Light 115	Remote Transmitter	Lockout Prevention System 178
Road Departure Mitigation 119, 120, 121	Types and Functions	Low Battery Charge 645
Rotate Wheel		Low Fuel Indicator 108

ow Oil Pressure Indicator	104 645	Maximum Permissible Weight 451	Outside Temperature Display	15
ow Smart Entry Remote Signal	,	Meters, Gauges	Overheating	
Strength	170	Mirrors 229		
ow Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicate		Adjusting 229	.	
ower Anchorages		Door 230	Р	
ubricant Specifications Chart		Exterior	Paddle Shifters	. 46
.uggage (Load Limit)		Interior Rearview	Panoramic Roof	. 20
uggage Area Cover		Modifications (and Accessories) 610	Parking Brake	. 51
.uggage Hooks		MP3 310, 346	Parking Brake and Brake System	
uggage Storage Area		Multi-View Rear Camera 545	Indicator (Amber) 103	3, 10
umbar Support			Parking Brake and Brake System	
		N.I.	Indicator (Red)	. 10
		N	Parking Sensor System 537	7, 54
И		Numbers (Identification) 663	Passing Indicators	. 21
Maintenance	553		Petrol 3 ⁻	1, 54
Battery	599	0	Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	. 55
Brake Fluid	582	O	Gauge	. 14
Cleaning	605	Odometer 146, 150	Information	. 54
Climate Control	603	Off-road Guidelines 453	Instant Fuel Economy	. 15
Coolant	577, 579	Oil (Engine) 572	Low Fuel Indicator	. 10
Oil	574	Adding 576	Refueling	. 54
Precautions	554	Checking 574	Playing Bluetooth® Audio 313	3, 34
Radiator	578, 580	Low Oil Pressure Indicator 104, 645	Power Tailgate	. 18
Remote Transmitter	602	Oil Monitor System 557	Hands Free Access	. 18
Replacing Light Bulbs	584	Recommended Engine Oil 572	Power Windows	. 19
Safety	555	Viscosity 572	Precautions While Driving	. 46
Transmission Fluid	581	Open Source Licences	Rain	. 46
Tyres	594	Opening/Closing	Pregnant Women	5
Under the Bonnet	568	Bonnet 570	Puncture (Tyre)	. 61
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	105, 646	Power Windows 197		

Tailgate 185

R	
Radiator	578, 580
Radio (FM/AM)	305, 341
Real Time AWD with Intelligent	
Control System	511
Rear Cooler Control System	288
Rear Demister	227
Rear Fog Light Indicator	115
Rear Seats	245
Second Row Seat 237	, 247, 249
Third Row Seat	239, 248
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	245
Rearview Mirror	229
Refueling	547
Fuel Gauge	145
Low Fuel Indicator	108
Petrol	547, 660
Regulations	665
Remote Transmitter	176
Replacement	
Battery	599
Bulbs	584
Front Wiper Blade Rubber	
Fuses	
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber	592
Tyres	
Resetting a Trip Meter	
Road Departure Mitigation	
On and Off	495

S
Safe Driving
Safety Check
Safety Labels
Safety Message 0
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor 54
Seat Belts
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 53
Checking56
Detachable Anchor54
e-pretensioners51
Fastening 52
Installing a Child Restraint System with
a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 92
Pregnant Women 55
Reminder
Warning Indicator
Seats
Adjusting
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support 233
Front Seats
Rear Seats 245
Second Row Seat
Third Row Seat
Second Row Seat (Folding Down) 245
Second Row Seats 237
Security System 195
Immobilizer System Indicator 116
Security System Alarm Indicator 116
Selecting a Child Restraint System
Selector Knob (Audio)

Setting the Clock	166
Shift Lever	. 28, 463, 465
Operation	. 28, 463, 466
Releasing	641
Won't Move	641
Shift Lever Position Indicator	105, 464, 466
Shifting (Transmission)	463, 465
Shoulder Anchor	53
Side Airbags	64
Side Curtain Airbag	66
Siri Eyes Free	356
Smartphone Connection	351
Spare Tyre	616, 662
Spark Plugs	660
Specifications	660
Specified Fuel	
Speedometer	145
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	61
Starting the Engine	455
Does Not Start	635
Engine Switch Buzzer	207
If the Battery Is Dead	638
Steering Wheel	228
Adjusting	228
Stopping	536
Sunglasses Holder	269
Sunshade	203
Supplemental Restraint System	(SRS) 61
Switches	
(Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 5, 6, 205
System Message Indicator	114

Т
Tachometer
Tailgate 185
Power Tailgate186
Unable to Open 657
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 155
Temperature Sensor 155
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 625
Third Row Seat (Folding Down) 248
Third Row Seat Access
Third Row Seats
Tie-down Anchors 267
Time (Setting) 166
Tonneau Cover
Tools 614
Towing a Trailer 452
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency 656
TPMS
(Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) 512
Calibration 514
Indicator
Transmission
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode
Continuously Variable
Fluid
Number
Shift Lever Position Indicator 105, 464, 466
System Indicator
TRIP Knob

rip Meter RK (Temporary Repair Kit) roubleshooting Blown Fuse Brake Pedal Vibrates	651,	625 613 653
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door		. 35
Emergency Towing		
Engine Won't Start		635
Noise When Braking		. 36
Overheating		
Puncture/Flat Tyre		616
Rear Door Won't Open	35,	180
Shift Lever Won't Move		641
Warning Indicators		102
urn Signals		209
Indicators (Instrument Panel)		114
urn-by-Turn Directions		156
⁻ yres		594
Air Pressure		662
Checking and Maintaining		594
Inspection		594
Puncture (Flat Tyre)		616
Rotation		597
Spare Tyre	616,	662
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)		625
Tyre Chains		598
Wear Indicators		
Winter		598

U

•
Unlocking the Doors
Unlocking the Front Doors from the
Inside 17
USB Flash Drives 310, 346, 367
USB Port(s) 293
V
Vanity Mirrors9
Vehicle Identification Numbers 663
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 506
Off Button 507
OFF Indicator 111
System Indicator 110
Ventilation 272
Viscosity (Oil) 572, 661
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 506
W
Wallpaper 301, 325
Warning and Information
Messages
Warning Indicator On/Blinking
Warning Labels
Watts 661
Wear Indicators (Tyre)
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 620

vvindow vvasners	222
Adding/Refilling Fluid	583
Switch	222
Windows (Opening and Closing)	197
Windscreen	222
Cleaning 606,	608
	284
Washer Fluid	583
Wiper Blades	590
Wipers and Washers	222
Winter Tyres	598
Tyre Chains	598
Wipers and Washers	222
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	223
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	590
Front	222
Rear	224
Wireless Charger	264
WMA 310,	346
Worn Tyres	594